



用英语说中国

INTRODUCE CHINA IN ENGLISH

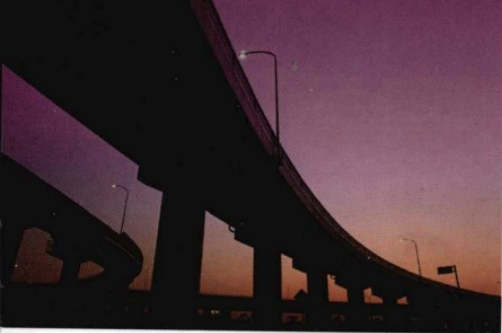
辉煌建设

Splendid Development

◎ 主编 刘 玮 浩 瀚

 科学技术文献出版社





用英语说中国

INTRODUCE CHINA IN ENGLISH



古今名人 • Eminent Persons

文化艺术 • Culture and Arts

魅力城市 • Charming Cities

辉煌建设 • Splendid Development

风俗民情 • Folk Customs

旅游亮点 • Scenic Spots

家庭生活 • Family Life

文明史迹 • History

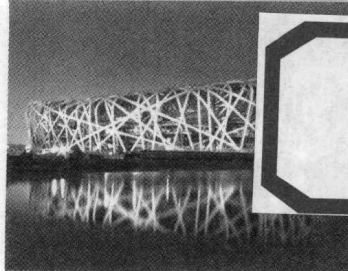
ISBN 978-7-5023-5844-0



9 787502 358440 >

定价: 14.00元

封面设计
宋雪梅



H319.4/1571

:6

2008

用英语说中国

INTRODUCE CHINA IN ENGLISH



辉煌建设

Splendid Development

主编 刘 玮 浩 瀚
编委 齐 齐 宋美盈 王亚彬 李 硕
李庆磊 刘雷雷 马 兰 蔡 丹
姚 青 李林德 潘永亮 王应铜
赵秀丽 尹晓洁 韩 磊 刘梓红
徐 萍 马 迅 徐光伟 赵修臣
李明亚 陈伟华 李 红

策划 北京浩瀚英语研究所

科学技术文献出版社

Scientific and Technical Documents Publishing House

北 京

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

辉煌建设/刘玮,浩瀚主编. -北京:科学技术文献出版社,2008.2
(用英语说中国)

ISBN 978-7-5023-5844-0

I. 辉… II. ①刘… ②浩… III. ①英语-语言读物 ②社会主义建设-成就-中国 IV. H319.4:D

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2007)第170871号

出 版 者 科学技术文献出版社

地 址 北京市复兴路15号(中央电视台西侧)/100038

图书编务部电话 (010)51501739

图书发行部电话 (010)51501720,(010)51501722(传真)

邮 购 部 电 话 (010)51501729

网 址 <http://www.stdph.com>

E-mail: stdph@istic.ac.cn

策 划 编 辑 李 洁 崔 岩

责 任 编 辑 崔 岩

责 任 校 对 唐 炜

责 任 出 版 王杰馨

发 行 者 科学技术文献出版社发行 全国各地新华书店经销

印 刷 者 利森达印务有限公司

版 (印) 次 2008年2月第1版第1次印刷

开 本 880×1230 32开

字 数 261千

印 张 9

印 数 1~8000册

定 价 14.00元

© 版权所有 违法必究

购买本社图书,凡字迹不清、缺页、倒页、脱页者,本社发行部负责调换。

(京)新登字 130 号

内 容 简 介

新中国成立后,中国经济呈现出复苏态势,改革开放以后,中国经济更是迅猛发展。现在中国已逐渐跻身于世界经济强国之林,为向世人展现中国改革开放的发展成果,本书着重向读者介绍了当今中国经济建设各领域中所取得的辉煌成绩,双语再现,全面生动。

全书共分两章,21个单元,内容分别为各行各业发展、中国的新政策和改革两大部分。

本书适合具有中级以上英语水平的读者参阅。

科学技术文献出版社是国家科学技术部系统唯一一家中央级综合性科技出版机构,我们所有的努力都是为了使您增长知识和才干。

前言 Foreword

中国是一个历史悠久的文明古国。古老的中华民族文化辉煌灿烂、历久不衰。当代中国在秉承优秀传统文化的同时,与时俱进,在世界民族发展的队伍中傲然前行。随着中国国民经济及对外交流的发展,各行各业取得了辉煌的业绩,特别是 2008 年奥运会申办成功以后,更推动了中国经济的发展。随着奥运会的步步临近,向世人更多地介绍中国现代化建设的发展成果更是势在必行。为此我们特别推出了《用英语说中国——辉煌建设》这本书。

全书分为:各行各业发展、中国的新政策及改革两大部分。全方位地介绍了中国近些年来发展及各种新政策。

本书每部分内容分栏为:

流畅精句:选择了贴切、简单、实用的语句,采用英汉对照的形式,让你脱口而出。

精彩片段:选用典型的、具有代表性的文章段落,介绍详细、具体、一目了然,可让读者获得学习英语和了解中国发展的双重丰收。

文化链接:用汉语讲述相关知识背景,可以让大家更深层地了解中国的发展轨迹。

妙词连珠:鲜活、亮丽词汇,为你脱口而出打下坚实基础。

用英语说中国,不仅让中国走向世界,也让世界更多地了解中国。

目 录



Chapter 1

Overview of the
Development

各行各业发展

Unit 1	Electronics	
	电子产品	[1]
Unit 2	Retail	
	零售业	[9]
Unit 3	Agriculture	
	农业	[19]
Unit 4	Automobiles	
	汽车业	[29]
Unit 5	Energy	
	能源	[42]
Unit 6	Aviation	
	飞机制造	[57]
Unit 7	Telecom Industry	
	电信业	[66]
Unit 8	Material	
	原材料	[79]
Unit 9	Cyber Economy	
	网络经济	[92]
Unit 10	Real Estate	
	房地产业	[107]
Unit 11	Education	
	教育	[121]



Chapter 2

China's New
Policies and Reforms

中国的新
政策及改革

Unit 1	South-to-North Water Transfer Project	
	南水北调工程	[130]
Unit 2	West-to-East Power Transmission	
	西电东送	[148]
Unit 3	Olympic Project	
	奥运工程	[161]
Unit 4	West-to-East Gas Transfer	
	西气东输工程	[175]
Unit 5	The Three Gorges Project	
	三峡工程	[189]
Unit 6	Qinghai-Tibet Railway	
	青藏铁路	[201]
Unit 7	Build New Socialist Countryside	
	建设社会主义新农村	[213]
Unit 8	Western China Development Drive	
	西部大开发	[228]
Unit 9	Open up and Foreign Trade	
	对外开放与交流	[246]
Unit 10	The 11th Five-Year Plan	
	“十一五”计划	[262]

1 各行各业发展

Overview of the Development

U 电子产品 Unit 1 Electronics



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. The cost advantage is still one of the primary factors driving such impressive growth in electronics.
成本的低廉依然是电子产品发展迅速的基本因素之一。
2. Labor costs in mainland China are about one sixth of those in Taiwan and one tenth of the US.
中国大陆地区劳动力成本是台湾的 1/6, 是美国的 1/10。
3. But the real growth potential lies in China's huge domestic market.
但是真正的增长潜力来源于中国巨大的国内市场。
4. China's consumer electronics industry sales were reported to total nearly US \$ 80 billion in 2006, a figure expected to be US \$ 100 billion by 2007.
中国电子产品 2006 年销售额将近 800 亿美元, 有望在 2007 年达到 1000 亿。
5. Although imports or foreign brands still make up a significant share of sales, domestic companies marketing their own brands have flourished to rival the market shares of multinationals like Sony and Toshiba.



虽然进口品牌仍占很大份额,但国内的一些公司已经在像索尼、东芝等这些跨国大公司充斥的市场中有了自己的市场份额和竞争力。

6. Lenovo Group is China's largest IT company and tops China's computer sales over Dell.

联想集团是中国最大的 IT 公司,在中国电脑销量已超过戴尔公司。

7. Companies like Changhong—China's largest television producer, Konka, and TCL, hold large shares in the electronics market.

像长虹——中国最大的电视机生产商、康佳及 TCL 王牌已经在电子市场上占有很大份额。



Wonderful Paragraph 精彩片段

Paragraph 1

C 中国电子产品 China's Electronics

China's rise to economic glory over the past quarter century began from an array of manufacturers churning out toys, bags, shoes, and other cheap commodities. Simple electronics figured into the mix early on, but were far behind the rest of the world in terms of intricacy and quality. But in the past decade, China's electronics industry and IT sector has boomed, to become the nation's largest industry, and the third largest in the world.

With cheap labor as its key initial attraction, a growing number of factories were set up in the late 1980's and early 1990's doing subcontracted assembly and OEM manufacturing for foreign markets. The cost advantage is still one of the primary factors driving such impressive growth. Labor costs in mainland China are about one sixth of those in Taiwan and one tenth of the US.

But the real growth potential lies in China's huge domestic market. In today's urban China, the latest household and personal technology is as widespread as in developed nations. China seems to have avoided entirely

the problem of resisting change which is such a factor of more mature markets.

A 2006 report by Global Sources confirms the continuing trend in consumption growth and more advancing technology. China's consumer electronics industry sales were reported to total nearly US \$ 80 billion in 2006, a figure expected to be US \$ 100 billion by 2007.

Propelled by the huge domestic consumer market, China's electronics sector has expanded into a diverse and comprehensive industry. Although imports or foreign brands still make up a significant share of sales, domestic companies marketing their own brands have flourished to rival the market shares of multinationals like Sony and Toshiba. Lenovo Group is China's largest IT company and tops China's computer sales over Dell, the number two contender. Haier presently claims the title of fourth among the world's white goods (large household appliances) manufacturers, with about 30% of the Chinese domestic market. Companies like Changhong-China's largest television producer, Konka, and TCL, hold large shares in the electronics market.

The Pearl River Delta region in southern China was the first place to see the boom in China's electronics industry and remains the focal point of activity.

Operations in the Yangtze River Delta, including Shanghai, Suzhou and Hangzhou, are newer and therefore generally have a slight technological advantage over those in Guangdong. The region's high-tech industry experienced a huge influx of operations from Taiwan in the late 1990's. Suzhou is now the world's largest laptop computer producer, for instance.

The northern coast has also emerged as a high-tech leader. Qingdao is home to names such as Haier and Hisense, two of China's best known domestic brands. Dalian has become a center for IT, with operations of IBM, Hewlett Packard, Microsoft, Dell, Sony, and other IT celebrities.



Paragraph 2

C2006—2007 年, 中国移动电视产业报告 **China Mobile TV Industry Report, 2006—2007**

It has two aspects—non-portable receiver (vehicle mobile TV) and portable receiver (handset mobile TV) and mainly about the development of mobile TV industry and also provides some operational strategies.

The mobile TV's types is adopting digital broadcasting technologies. The receiver can be fixed on bus, subway, city railway, taxi or some other public places, and it also can be fixed on hand-hold equipments, such as mobile phone, laptop, PMP, and super portable PC etc.

Most of the Areas Adopting DVB-T as Digital Terrestrial TV Standard.

There are three kinds of Digital Terrestrial TV Standards: DVB-T, ATSC and ISDB-T. Most of the countries and regions in Europe adopt DVB-T; Only Japan adopts ISDB-T; North America adopts ATSC; China, Mongolia and South America have not defined their standards. There are still 16% of countries and regions intended to adopt DVB-T.

Paragraph 3

D中国的数字电视 **Digital Terrestrial TV in China**

China basically defined the digital terrestrial TV standard, but still takes time before put into practice

Currently, the standards in China that have been industrialized are Tsinghua University's DMB-T, Shanghai Jiao Tong University's ADTB-T, Academy of Broadcasting Science's TiMi and DVB-T from Europe.

Though the standard is delayed to be issued over and over again, the Digital Terrestrial TV has been broadcasted in 43 cities. It has spread from bus, taxi to subway, railway, ferry, building and city emergency management information system. Most of these regions adopt Tsinghua University's DMB-T and DVB-T from Europe. Shanghai adopts Shanghai Jiao Tong University's ADTB-T.

Paragraph 4

T从 DMB 到 DVB-H 手机电视标准的发展 **V Handset Standard Develops from DMB to DVB-H**

There are two kinds of network to transmit TV handset program: one is based on mobile telecommunication network, the other is based on broadcasting network. Currently, broadcasting network develops prior to mobile telecommunication network. S/T-DMB and DVB-H standards develop faster than Media FLO and, the development of T-DMB in Korea and China has become highlighted. MediaFLO and ISDB-T standards from America and Japan are mainly used for their own countries. Among these standards, S-DMB was the first one used for commerce and that was adopted by Korea in May 2005. Then in Dec 2005, the S-DMB was replaced by T-DMB in Korea. TV Handset based on DVB-H standard has been officially used for commerce since May 2006. Considering from the view of the world, DVB-H has great potential for development.

Paragraph 5

G基于不同标准的手机电视全球销售额 **Global Sales of TV Handsets Based on Different Standards**

The global sales of TV handsets that supporting S-DMB standard reached 4.46 million units in 2005. It is forecasted that by the end of 2009, the global sales of TV handset will exceed 42 million units. The sales of TV handset that supporting DVB-H standard will greatly increase in the near future.

The Diversification Trend of China's TV Handset Standards, the Providers of TV Handset Solutions will take Multi-model and Multi-frequency-range as the Access to Market.

In China, there will be many TV handset standards at the same time. Currently, among the three trial cities, Shanghai adopts T-DMB/L-Band frequency range; Beijing and Guangzhou adopt T-DMB/Band-III. Nokia has



been looking for the opportunity to test its DVB-H TV handset standard in China. Furthermore, Tsinghua University is developing its DMB-TH standard based on DMB-T.

Paragraph 6

P数字电视的普及率 **ervasion Ratio of Digital TV**

It is obvious that the digital TV pervasion ratio in China is much lower than that of the globally average level, even a bigger gap between UK and USA respectively. Reasons for this are various, including policy, fund and the lack of content, etc.

China's cable TV (CATV) industry has a history of 30 years up to 2006 and through years of development, CATV is now the largest cable TV network throughout the world and becomes one of the most important components in China's radio TV industry. Currently, China's digital TV is mainly cable digital TV relying upon the CATV network.

Digital mobile TV realizes the broadcasting and receiving of digital programs through radio digital signal emission and ground digital receiver, taking buses, taxis, subways, light rails, business cars and personal cars, etc as its carriers. In a sense, mobile TV has become the best information channel of some citizens.

China started to transmit CCTV programs nationwide with communication satellites in 1985. For the past 21 years, China has made a great progress in satellite broadcasting & TV technology. The adoption of satellite digital compression technology elevates the signal quality of TV programs from CCTV or provincial broadcast TV stations and expands the population coverage of broadcast and TV. Thanks for the satellite television 1 226 million Chinese are covered in 2005, with a coverage ratio of 95.81%, much higher than 68.3% in 1985. Yet due to a certain policy factor, live broadcast of digital TV in China is still being restricted to some extent. Anyway, nothing can hinder its development trend in the long term.

Though compared with developed countries, China is lagged far be-

hind in the field of digital TV, yet it made rapid progress in 2005; altogether 4.13 million Chinese subscribed digital TV, increasing by over twofold compared to the previous year. Among them, 3.97 million were digital cable digital TV subscribers.



中国电子产品生产的优势

电子政务的建设推动了电子产品生产的发展。北京奥运工程的建设,以及各地提出建数字省、信息港、光谷、硅谷、软件园、微电子园区等等,把信息产业作为支柱产业给以支持,无疑给电子产品生产带来了新的活力。

有较好的发展机遇。主要表现在三方面:一是随着跨国公司不断将 IT 生产制造业务转移到中国,越来越多的跨国公司投资重点逐渐由加工、制造向培训、研发等知识型领域延伸,设立研发机构。这将进一步推动中国电子产品结构的优化与升级,推动产品由低端产业链向高端产业链、由信息技术大国向信息技术强国的跨越式发展。二是中国具有成本低和人才多等综合优势。作为具备这些条件为数不多的发展中国家,中国正成为全球信息产业资源优化配置的重要市场集散地。三是中国正在进行大规模信息化建设,电子政务、电子商务、企业信息化、城市信息化、社区信息化等多方面信息化建设,为电子产品生产提供了强大市场需求。

国内企业走出去为生产自己电子产品奠定了基础。2002 年以来,中国通信企业、家电企业不断到非洲、中东欧国家投资办厂,带动通信设备和家电产品向这些新市场的出口快速增长。譬如长虹、海尔、联想、北大方正、华为、中兴、中国联通、中国移动等企业,他们以境外办“窗口”、建立研发中心等形式,或以境外投资办厂、建立国际营销网络等方式,或以跨国并购、境外上市等途径,已经有了一定的实力和技术力量,为实现自己的电子产品奠定了基础。

电子产品生产基本完成了原始积累。一些软件企业不断调整企业内部机制,加快中国香港地区或国外上市步伐,谋取更大发展空间;一些软件企业与国外企业加强战略合作,实施优势互补,成立联合实验室、研发中心、解决方案中心等;一些电子产品生产企业不断加大企业软件研发力度,提高软件新品种开发能力,使嵌入式软件产品比例迅速提高。



Vocabulary

妙词连珠

closed circuit television 闭路电视

very large scale integrated circuit

超大规模集成电路

electromagnetic field 电磁场

electrodynamics 电动力学

electrooptic-Q-switch 电光 Q 开关

electrooptic lay 电光层

electrooptic prism 电光棱镜

electrooptic modulation crystal

电光调制晶体

electrooptic modulator 电光调制器

electrosynthesis 电合成

electrocheical machining 电解加工

electronic brain 电子计算机

electron-hole recombination

电子空穴载流子

electron flow 电子流

light emitting diode 发光二极管

optical sensor 光敏传感器

silicon valley 硅谷

infrated TV sysem 红外电视系统

infrared photography 红外摄影

exciton 激子

IC A/D converter 集成 A/D 转换器

electrostatic image dissector

静电析像管

electrostatically suspended gyro

静电悬浮陀螺

automatic controller for corridor illumination 楼道照明自动控制器

automatic switch for street lamp

路灯自动控制器

FM broadcast 调频广播

U 零售业 Unit 2 Retail

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. China's retail industry has a big market capacity.
中国的零售业有很大的市场。
2. In the urban market, the toothpaste products are developing towards top level.
在城市市场中,牙膏业发展非常迅速。
3. In the rural market, the sale of the products at low prices will rise promptly.
在农村市场低档价位的产品销量很好。
4. Since the late 1990s, its market capacity has maintained a growth of 5% per year.
从 20 世纪 90 年代起,它以每年 5% 的份额增长。
5. With the quick increase of foreign funds coming into china's commercial industry, the competition in commercial industry is becoming extremely fierce.
随着外资涌入中国经济产业,商业的竞争越来越激烈。
6. With the national economy keeping a stable development, the retail industry is also in a stage of relatively stable growth.
随着国民经济的稳定发展,零售业也在稳步发展中。
7. With the increase of citizen's consumption level, cars and houses have become common consumer goods. The consumption structure has begun a new change.
随着城镇居民消费水平的增长,汽车与住房成为主要消费产品。消费结构发生了新的变化。



8. While most domestic makers are struggling to survive.
许多国内品牌在竞争中博得生存。
9. In 2006, China's tobacco industry experienced recovery growth, with increase in both output and sales revenue.
2006年,中国的烟草行业增长很快——产量与销量都很大。



Wonderful Paragraph 精彩片段

Paragraph 1

F 在中国的外国零售业 Foreign Retail Enterprises in China

Foreign retail enterprises began trickling in as early as 1992, and over 350 such enterprises were operating by 2000 under various local sanctions, but only 40 of them had gained proper approval from the central government. A crackdown followed, presumably in anticipation of WTO entry, requiring foreign investors to conform to a set of trial regulations passed in 1999. These regulations limited investors geographically to capitals and single-city administrative regions and set tough requirements on assets and profitability.

Regulations were again changed on WTO entry with the unveiling of a new plan for the retail sector's transformation. These rules initially stipulated even more constrictive geographical limits, minority partnership for foreign firms in joint ventures with domestic enterprises, and limits on the number of ventures and their branch networks. After two years, these constraints were softened and have now been dropped completely.

The world's two largest retailers, Wal-Mart of the US and Carrefour of France, both endured hard times for nearly a decade following their debuts in China. Carrefour, China's largest foreign retailer with over 100 stores open to date, saw its first profitable year as late as 2003. That same year, Wal-Mart was still reporting net loss, having done so consecutively each year since its introduction to China in 1996.

With restrictions eased, these two giants and other foreign firms all have big expansion plans. Wal-Mart alone plans to open more than 20 new stores in 2006. The foreign influx underway may be the biggest overhaul of the Chinese retail market ever, with unpredictable results.

Paragraph 2

D国内产业 **Domestic Enterprises**

Domestic enterprises are readying themselves as their top ranks in the market come under threat. Shanghai Bailian Group, currently number one in China, has undergone restructuring and made as many acquisitions as possible in an effort to deepen its size advantage. Shanghai Bailian had a total of around 5 000 outlets and US \$ 12 billion in sales for 2004. The market remained effectively protected from foreign competitors before 2005, when foreign retailers only accounted for somewhere around five to eight percent of the market.

Higher sales to floor space ratios allow these stores to offer price advantages by as much as 20%. With limited branch options, foreign retailers have been able to make single hypermarket stores far more profitable than most supermarkets. The hypermarket has been a popular choice. Hypermarkets in China take a different shape than their counterparts in other countries, appearing near concentrations of people in a multi-story arrangement. Most customers arrive on foot, by bicycle, or by way of public transportation, visiting more frequently but spending less per visit.

Another phenomenon is the huge growth in the convenience store sector, but the number of convenience stores in China is still disproportionately small. Lawson's and FamilyMart, both Japanese in origin, are common sights in Shanghai, but are still absent from the vast majority of China's cities. Eleven already operates over 160 stores in mainland China, but until 2004, limited its business to Guangdong.

Foreign retailers occupy a very small share of the traditional department store sector. The Malaysia-based Parkson has a number of high-end department stores in a few of China's large and medium-sized cities. Huge numbers of outdated state-run department stores appear headed for extinc-



tion. China's increasing number of malls may become an important medium for up-and-coming retailers.

As with many other areas of China's industry, foreign image, service, and efficiency are up against the market dominance of domestic retailers. But opportunities abound.

Paragraph 3

C中国牙膏业报告(1) **China's Toothpaste Industry Report(1)**

China's toothpaste industry has a big market capacity. Since the late 1990s, its market capacity has maintained a growth of 5% per year, maintaining a steady change in quarters within one year. By the year of 2004, the Chinese oral cleaning market scale has achieved a scale of 7 billion Yuan. In 2005, the toothpaste sales in China reached a scale of 4 billion units (65g/units). By the year of 2010, the number will have reached 4.5 billion tubes. Currently the brand structure of the Chinese toothpaste market falls into four groups: The first group consists of the foreign and joint venture strong brands, including Colgate, Crest, Zhonghua, Black Man; The second group is Chinese native traditional leading brands, including Liangmianzhen, Tianqi, Heimei, Lengsuanling, Blue Sky, etc.; The third group consists of the new powerful brands, including LG Bamboo Salt, Nice, Yongnan (Shushuang), etc. And the fourth, the 3rd and 4th grade brands are mostly the extension of the product lines of medium or small toothpaste companies or daily chemical enterprises/groups. Though they have some impact on regional markets, yet have little influence on the whole industry.

From the view of the regional structure, in the urban market, the toothpaste products are developing towards top level. In the rural market, the sale of the products at low prices will rise promptly. After brands of the first group have occupied the urban market, the marketing focus began to incline towards the rural market. From the view of the price structure, the foreign brands of the first group began to penetrate into the low-end price from the high-end price. The Chinese native brands of the second group began to counterattack from the low-end price to the medium-to-high end price. At present, the Chinese native brands of the second and the third

group are approaching success during the counterattack in the medium-to-high end market. Another round of reshuffle will urge the change of the current market structure and the Chinese native brands will emerge in the first group. From the view of the product structure, the functional and medicated toothpastes stand in the dominant position. From the view of the taste structure, salt taste is the biggest hotspot in the market. LG bamboo salt is the most popular one, followed by Crest and Colgate.

Paragraph 4

C中国牙膏业报告(2) **China's Toothpaste Industry Report(2)**

China's oral cleaning supplies industry will maintain a rapid development and the export will have a remarkable growth during the 11th five-year plan; the products will continue to maintain the world first-class quality. The herbal medicated toothpaste will develop rapidly. The industrial integration and product innovation are speeding up. The market is going on further market diversification and segmentation. The production will be more scientific, standard and advanced and the name brand effect is enhanced, but due to the intense competition, the restriction of original material and the low profit margin, most enterprises keep a relatively low profit level.

Based on a great deal of information from the National Bureau of Statistics, the General Administration of State Customs, the Economy & Trade Commission of China, the Light Industry Statistics Bureau of China, China Commercial Information Center, China Oral Care Products Industry Association, the National Economy Prosperity Survey Center, the China Toothpaste Industry Information, China Industries Research Website, Chinese and foreign relative newspapers and some research institutions of daily chemical, this report analyses on the supply and demand of China's toothpaste market, market competitive structure and development. It also analyzes in detail about the market sale and the impacts China's toothpaste industry will face in the WTO era as well as some strategies the enterprises have to take. In addition, a prediction about the trend of the relative industrial policies is also made to give you a comprehensive understanding of China toothpaste market.



Paragraph 5

C中国商业链的发展 **China's Chain Business Development**

The chain businesses in China are increasingly expanding and growing maturely, and tend to be characterized as multiple business forms and wide-areas. With the quick increase of foreign funds coming into China's commercial industry, the competition in commercial industry is becoming extremely fierce. The business conditions in first-degree cities have tended to saturation; the second and third degree cities and the relatively developed rural market are the key areas to draw investment in the future.

With the national economy keeping a stable development, the retail industry is also in a stage of relatively stable growth, and is targeted by considerable investments.

With the increase of citizen's consumption level, cars and houses have become common consumer goods. The consumption structure has begun a new change.

In the aspect of commercial credit or investment, the goods with high growth rate such as cars, cultural and physical appliances should be targeted, as for the regions, the urban and developed areas should be taken into account; credit and investment in the long term is adapted to the rural areas in the east of the country.

Paragraph 6

C中国零售业报告 **China's Retail Industry Report**

In 2004, the retail market capacity grew steadily in China and the annual retail amount of the social consumables reached RMB 5 395 billion, a 13.3% year-on-year. The actual growth amounted to 10.2% with the inflation deducted. The urban-rural and regional differences are further expanding. The retail sales of urban consumables achieved RMB 3557.3 billion in 2004, with a 14.7% rise. The retailing amount of consumables in county markets reached RMB 1837.7 billion with an increase rate of 10.7%.

In 2005, hundreds of domestic large-scale retailing enterprises grew

fast and steadily. The total sales of commodities and the retailing amount respectively achieved RMB 87.98 billion and RMB 73.6 billion, up by 17.5% and 18.3% compared to the same period last year. According to the statistical study on 28 categories of goods, the retail sales of twenty-four categories grew compared to the same period of 2004. What's more, the growth margins of twenty-one categories were above 10%. It grows faster in 2006.

Before huge foreign capitals flow into China, many large domestic enterprises are taking chain operation as development strategy to accelerate their expansion domestically, especially in large and medium-sized cities. Coordinated and supported by the Government, some competitive enterprises merged into super-giant enterprise groups through purchasing property rights. Thus, the market concentration ratio of the retailing industry keeps growing.

The report summarizes the environment for the development of China's retail industry and gives an analysis of domestic retailing after the opening to the outside world. Besides, retailing places consisting of supermarkets, convenience stores, shopping centers and department stores are carefully studied as well. The report deeply analyzes the retailing development in some regions of China and retail enterprises home and abroad. We also present an elaborate analysis on the combination of the retail industry with other industries, as well as retail investment & trends.

Paragraph 7

C中国护肤市场报告 **China's Skin Care Market Report**

In China's skin care market, the competition among home-made, joint-ventured and imported products is getting increasingly fierce. Foreign and joint venture brands mainly dominate in the top grade market, while domestic brands centralize in middle and low grade market, where there are small profits and a quick turnover. Currently there are over 1300 skin care products in Chinese market. Skin care sales account for 26—35 percent, according to the regions, of the total cosmetics sales, because the purchase rate and usage rate of skin care products are relatively high in China.



Under fierce competition, domestic brands have been multi-polarized. Some once famous brands have died out or declined to regional brands. While most domestic makers are struggling to survive, Shanghai Jahwa, Beijing Sanlu and Shenzhen Lisida, who have stressed attention on brand value and on establishing a strong brand, have made great progress in the market and have gained achievements in the middle and low grade market. As transnationals are using China market to realize their worldwide expansion goals, the pricing and distribution network advantages domestic brands once had will disappear.

Here we use the data from Chinese National Bureau of Statistics, China Customs General Administration, State Economic & Trade Commission, Light Industrial Statistics Bureau, State Commercial Information Center, and China Association of Fragrance Flavor and Cosmetic Industry. It also refers to over hundred industrial publications such as Cosmetic Newspaper, China Cosmetics, Commodity Chemical Information, Beauty and Fashion, and Trends. Here deals with the status of global skin care market and with China skin care market, demand and supply of skin care raw materials, sales channels of skin care products, leaders in the skin care market, current consumer psychology, and trends of skin care market.

Paragraph 8

C中国烟草业报告 **China's Tobacco Industry Report**

Now, sum up the development of the global and China's tobacco industries in 2006. Through accurate data and full elaboration, it describes the structure of China's tobacco industry and competition situation in the industry from various angles. Meanwhile, presents assessment of major enterprises' business strategy and competitiveness.

The report especially points out the following: In 2006, China's tobacco industry experienced recovery growth, with increase in both output and sales revenue. The industry's comprehensive economic indicators improved. Consolidation produced initial effect, and the industry has boosted its international competitiveness. The content of tar in cigarette products decreased significantly. Market competition shifted from purely local protec-

tionism to comprehensive competition involving various factors. Brand competition is getting increasingly fierce. In the next few years, production and sales of tobacco will continue to grow steadily, but the margin of growth will not be wide. Driven by market demand, the price of cigarettes will keep rising. As the grade of cigarettes improves, the room for the fourth-class and fifth-class cigarettes will shrink. The tobacco industry will continue to consolidate. Yunnan, Shanghai and Hunan cigarette groups are emerging.



Cultural Links

文化链接

五大举措提速中国零售业

虽然我国零售业整体发展态势良好,但也存在着企业规模小、流通方式落后、经营管理的规范化水平亟待提高等问题。

要解决这些问题,应从五方面着手。

其一,应该加快立法建设,完善流通法律体系。

其二,加快发展社区商业,培育新的消费热点。政府将争取利用3—5年时间,在全国人口过百万的181个城市中,初步完成社区商业建设和改造工作,形成服务质量和水平较高的社区商业综合服务体系。

其三,努力提高利用外资的水平和质量。支持国内大型零售企业在境外建立营销网络,带动国内商品出口;鼓励外资参与国有商业企业的改组改造,进一步盘活存量资产等。

其四,积极培育流通领域具有国际竞争力的大企业集团。同时,提高中小零售企业的组织化程度,发展一批具有区域优势、以本土化经营为特色的企业组织。

其五,大力推进流通现代化,深化流通体制改革,探索内外贸一体化发展的有效途径;进一步推动连锁经营、物流配送和电子商务等现代流通方式的发展。

 Vocabulary
妙词连珠

open-air market 露天市场	poultry and egg market 禽蛋市场
buyer's market 买方市场	business establishment 商号
seller's market 卖方市场	commodity exchange 商品交易所
trading market 贸易市场	commodity market 商品市场
retail sales 零售	outlets for goods 商品销售市场
temple fair 庙会	trading company 商行
busy shopping centre 闹市	food market 食品市场
farm produce market 农产品市场	street fair 市区交易会
rural fair 农村集市	book market 书市
agricultural products market 农贸市场	vegetable exchange 蔬菜交易所
farmer's market 农民市场	aquatic products market 水产品市场
auction market 拍卖市场	fruit market 水果市场
wholesale market 批发市场	haberdashery 服饰用品店
option market 期货市场	clothing shop 服装店
grocer's grocery 副食品商店	notion store 妇女用品商店
fashionable shop 高档商店	antique shop 古玩店
pastrycook's shop 糕饼店	foreign agency 国外代销店
handicraft and art service store 工艺美术品商店	state store 国营商店
handicrafts shop 工艺品商店	florist and bird shop 花鸟市场
	flower stall 花摊

U 农业 nit 3 Agriculture



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. Building a new countryside to tackle problems facing agriculture, rural areas and farmers is the highest priority of the Chinese Central Government, with its strategic task outlined in its *Eleventh Five-Year Plan*, newly released in March 2006.

建设新农村面临的问题是中国中央政府必须优先解决好农业、农村和农民的问题,这是 2006 年 3 月新公布的“十一五”计划的首要任务。

2. This new policy will activate agricultural and rural development in China.

这项新政策将激活农业和农村经济发展。

3. With the above opportunities as well as challenges, AAFC and its Chinese partners in science and technology will be holding a series of science and innovation events in China in the fall of 2006.

在机会与挑战下,AAFC 及其中国伙伴将在 2006 年秋季交易会中取得科学与技术的一系列成果与创新发

4. Over the past decade, the CAF has established itself as the acclaimed “China Agricultural Olympic Fair” under the direct support of the Chinese central government.

过去十年来,该研究所已在中国中央政府的大力支持下建立了著名的“中国农业奥林匹克博览会”。

5. Last year alone, 1 000 companies displayed more than 5 000 hi-tech technologies and 257 contracts were signed resulting in trade totaling over US \$ 2 billion.



仅去年,1000 家公司就展开 5000 多项高科技技术项目,共签订合同 257 个,贸易总额超过 20 亿美元。

6. The desertification and agri-eco system in China are of great concern to the Chinese government and the world.

中国政府和世界都极为关注荒漠化及农业生态系统问题。

7. In 1949, China's grain output was 113. 18 million tons, and that of cotton 444 000 tons; the agricultural foundation was fragile.

1949 年,我国粮食总产量为 11318 万吨,棉花 44.4 万吨,农业基础薄弱。

8. Between 1950 and 1953, the Chinese government carried out a wide-ranging land reform in the rural areas.

1950—1953 年,中国政府进行了广泛的农村土地改革。

9. Peasants with little or no land were given land of their own, greatly arousing their enthusiasm for production.

原来拥有很少或没有土地的农民获得了自己的土地,生产积极性大大提高。

10. During the period of the First Five-Year Plan (1953—1957), the yearly gross output of agriculture increased by 4.5 percent, on average.

第一个五年计划(1953—1957 年)时期的农业总产值每年平均增长 4.5 个百分点。

11. From 1958 to 1978, China's agriculture developed slowly.

从 1958 年至 1978 年,我国农业发展缓慢。

12. Contracting land out to peasants altered the distribution form of land and mobilized the peasants enthusiasm for production.

土地承包责任制改变了土地所有制形式,调动了农民的生产积极性。

13. Commodity production and circulation in rural areas developed at an unprecedented scale and rate.

农村商品生产和流通以前所未有的规模和速度发展。

14. China's township enterprises have developed on the basis of the handicrafts industry and the processing of agricultural products and by-products.

我国乡镇企业是在手工业和农副产品加工业的基础上发展起来的。



Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

T农业的发展历史与变化(1) **he History and Changes in Agriculture(1)**

Two thirds of the Chinese population are employed in the agricultural industry, making this sector the top consideration affecting Beijing's policies. Representing the base of national living standards, consideration for rural residents is not merely a matter of winning their favor, but also a matter of the survival of the Chinese Communist Party. Throughout China's history, food supply fluctuations have been at the heart of economic and political stability. Agriculture and China's rural population form the foundation for sustainable growth and prosperity.

Income disparity between urban and rural citizens has been growing under the economic boom of the past quarter century; having fallen behind other areas of economic development over the past two decades, agriculture is once again a top priority. To ease pressures facing the rural population, the central government announced in March 2006 that agricultural taxes will be phased out over the next five years, a key event in the constant readjustment of agricultural policy in recent decades.

Following the Communist takeover in 1949, land was seized from landowners and given to the peasants, sealing Mao's position as the undisputed leader of "New China". But during the Great Leap Forward of 1958, the land was taken from the peasants again and put in control of communes. Farmers faced production quotas and fixed pricing on yields sold directly to the state. The failure of the communes resulted in the largest famines in modern Chinese history.



In late 1978, Deng Xiaoping set a freer agricultural market in motion. The communes were gradually dissolved and replaced by the “household responsibility system”, whereby land allotments were contracted to farmers, shifting management responsibilities back to households. Wary of the potentially catastrophic risks inherent in hasty, large-scale reform movements like the Great Leap Forward, new policies have since generally been implemented gradually. Now, in the midst of the transition from a planned economy to a free market, prices of agricultural products are still subject to a measure of regulation, grain in particular. But reduced regulation has exposed China’s countryside to economic survival-of-the-fittest, where many lucky and diligent farmers are seen rising to affluence while others sink further into poverty.

The changes sweeping China’s agriculture are not limited to the transition to an open market. Urbanization is having a deep effect on labor and land supply. Rural residents are attracted to the higher wages of China’s cities. Urban migration is partly controlled by a household registration system, but with decreased enforcement, China is seeing ever more migration.

Paragraph 2

T农业的发展历史与变化(2) **he History and Changes in Agriculture(2)**

Cultivated land is continually being lost to urban and industrial use. China accounts for 20% of the world’s population but only 7% of the arable farmland. Moreover, the population is growing while the land is shrinking.

Meanwhile, the Chinese diet is changing. Recent years have seen an increase in variety and greater consumption of higher-priced products. More meat, more imports, more western fast foods, more high-value foods. Allowed greater leeway, farms are shifting from producing grains to more profitable commodities like cotton, fruits, vegetables, and dairy and meat products.

All these changes have contributed to China’s increasing dependence

on food imports. To promote self-sufficiency, the central government continues to purchase 75% of domestic grain production, and keep massive grain reserves.

Additional pressure comes from stipulations relating to China's entry into the WTO, which expose the agricultural industry to greater foreign competition. Utilization of land area is not nearly as efficient in China as is developed countries which rely much more heavily on employment of mechanization, chemicals and genetic engineering.

The Chinese authorities have required a system of certification for all genetically modified products introduced into the market, but their use is increasing.

Other areas needing development span the industry. Mechanized tools such as tractors, combines and processing equipment are still lacking, although Heilongjiang in China's far northeast reports agricultural mechanization already on par with developed nations. With the exception of the Northeast, vast expanses of flat farmland are rarely found in China; planters are often forced to raise crops in small plots on whatever nooks and crannies are available, demanding a higher amount of manpower and limiting the use of efficient mechanized methods. Still, under these conditions, greater possibilities exist for mixed cropping, which can reduce the need for pesticides and fertilizers.

Irrigation and water pollution are also major issues. Generally speaking, Northern China tends to be plagued by drought while many southern regions are susceptible to floods. Channeling of water and flood management through construction of dams and canals has already been successful and can be further implemented on a larger scale.

Paragraph 3

中国农药市场 **China's Pesticide Market**

Through accurate data and full elaboration, it presents the structure of China's pesticide market and features of the demand-supply relationship



from various angles. Meanwhile, it examines competition between enterprises in different segment markets, presenting comprehensive assessment of leading players' competitiveness.

It especially points out the following: In 2006, China's pesticide industry experienced good production and economic operation, seeing different rises in various economic indicators. Its main characteristics were: overproduction was under control, product structural adjustment smoothly improved, exports continued to grow, pesticide supply met the needs of agricultural production and economic performance in the industry was better than expected. China will become a model market in the world, but it still needs to improve the competitiveness of its pesticide competitiveness. It lacks high-end products and technology. Brand positioning will become more important in the future and the two major factors technology and cost will play a growing role in competition.

Paragraph 4

A 关于中国农业的一项新政策 **New Policy about Agriculture in China**

With China emerging as the global economic power and becoming a major global focus, the Government of Canada is in the process of developing a five-year comprehensive approach to engaging China as a strategic partner. Part of the strategy is the ongoing signing of a Canada-China Agreement on Science and Technology Cooperation.

Building a new countryside to tackle problems facing agriculture, rural areas and farmers is the highest priority of the Chinese Central Government, with its strategic task outlined in its Eleventh Five-Year Plan, newly released in March 2006. This new policy will activate agricultural and rural development in China and provide further opportunities for Canada-China collaborations as part of Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada (AAFC)'s own Science and Innovation Strategy for the 21st century. China has also achieved scientific and technological developments, placing an emphasis on innovation in its national strategy as outlined in the Guidelines of the State



Council in February 2006. Meanwhile in the drive to national modernization, environmental protection in China has been of great concern to the Chinese government and the world.

With the above opportunities as well as challenges, AAFC and its Chinese partners in science and technology will be holding a series of science and innovation events in China in the fall of 2006. These events will showcase Canadian agriculture and agri-food achievements in China, brand Canada, seek further mutually beneficial alliances, promote bi-lateral trade and set a path to a bright future by specifically targeting innovation.

The main event in the series will be the Canada-China Agri-Science & Innovation Pavilion, which will be featured from November 5th-9th, 2006, in Yangling, China, in conjunction with the China Agricultural High-Tech Fair (CAF), the most comprehensive agricultural exposition in China.

AAFC is seeking partnerships with other Canadian and Chinese departments, universities and industries to participate in these Canada-China co-operative events.

Paragraph 5

C 农产品业 Crop Industry

China's main grain crops are rice, wheat, corn, soybeans and tuber crops. Paddy rice is the major grain crop in China, grown mainly in the Yangtze River valley and southern China, and on the Yunnan-Guizhou Plateau. Its output accounts for two-fifths of the total grain output. The output of wheat accounts for slightly more than one fifth of the total output of grain; it is planted throughout China but mainly on the North China Plain. The output of corn, grown in the provinces of northeastern, northern and southwestern China, accounts for one fourth of the total grain output. Soybeans are grown on the Northeast China Plain and the plains along the Yellow and Huaihe rivers. Sweet potatoes are grown widely in China, but mainly in the Pearl River valley, along the middle and lower reaches of the Yangtze River, the lower reaches of the Yellow River and in the Sichuan Basin.



Cash crops include cotton, peanuts, rape, sesame, sugarcane, tea, tobacco, mulberry and fruit. Cotton is grown mainly along the Yellow River and the middle and lower reaches of the Yangtze River, and in the Manas River valley in Xinjiang. Peanuts are grown in Shandong, Guangdong, Guangxi and Liaoning. Rape is produced along the middle and lower reaches of the Yangtze River, and in the Sichuan Basin. Sugarcane is grown in southern China. Beets are grown for the most part in Heilongjiang, Jilin and Inner Mongolia.

Paragraph 6

A畜牧业 **Animal Husbandry**

China has more than 300 million acres of exploitable grasslands, distributed mainly throughout Inner Mongolia, the basin between the Tianshan and Altai mountains in Xinjiang and on the Qinghai-Tibet Plateau. China has great numbers of over 400 species of domestic animals, including pigs, cattle, sheep, horses, donkeys, mules, camels, chickens, ducks, geese and rabbits. Since 1978, animal husbandry has developed rapidly; the outputs of meat, eggs, milk and leather products have doubled and redoubled, and they have been exported in large quantities.

Paragraph 7

F水产品 **Fishery Industry**

Before the introduction of the reform and opening, the outputs of freshwater and saltwater fish, relying on natural rivers, lakes and fisheries near the sea, were low. But since 1978, China has stressed artificial aquatic products breeding and at the same time devoted great efforts to developing deep-sea fishing. As a result, the output of aquatic products has risen greatly, increasing by two million tons, on average, every year. Now, more than 20 deep-sea fishing companies have been set up in China, and wholly Chinese-owned and Chinese-foreign joint enterprises have also been

established abroad engaging in this business.

Paragraph 8

T城镇企业 **township Enterprises**

China's township enterprises have developed on the basis of the handicrafts industry and the processing of agricultural products and by-products. They have flourished since 1978, becoming the mainstays of the rural economy. In 1999, 2 500 billion Yuan in industrial output value was produced by the township enterprises, and the value of exported commodities came to 720 billion Yuan. Now there are more than 20 million township enterprises in China, having 125 million employees. Township enterprises are involved in industry, agriculture and transportation, along with the building, commerce, and catering trades. They produce a variety of goods, from products needed in agriculture to daily necessities, foodstuffs, sideline products and light industrial materials. Many of these products are exported.



农业可持续发展的内涵

中国农业可持续发展首先要强调发展。中国作为发展中国家,只有发展才能满足人们日益增长的农产品需求;这种需求不仅指数量增加上的满足,更应指农产品质量提高上的满足。

农业可持续发展关键在于保护农业自然资源和生态环境。农业可持续发展就是要把农业发展、农业资源合理开发利用和资源环境保护结合起来,尽可能减少农业发展对农业资源环境的破坏和污染,置农业发展于农业资源的良性循环之中。

有效控制农村人口,提高人口素质。努力控制农村人口过快的增长速度,以便减轻农业人口对资源和环境的压力。大力发展文化科技教育事业,提高农村人口素质,是农业可持续发展的保证,是形成自觉保护资源环境的前提。



提高农业生产效益,优化农业投入结构。全面发展农、林、牧、副、渔各业,实现生产经营适度规模化,农业生产结构合理化,农产品品种多样化和品质优良化,实现农业生产的高产、优质、高效和低耗,变原来的粗放经营为集约经营,达到农业可持续发展的目的。

农业可持续发展是指农村经济和社会经济全方面的持续发展。实现农业可持续发展不单纯地是追求数量上的增加,而是要实现农民日益富裕、农业社会全面进步,使农村的资源环境、人口、经济和社会相互协调,共同发展。



Vocabulary 妙词连珠

companion crop 伴种作物
green crop 菜类作物
long-season crops 长期作物
spring-sown crop 春种作物
soybean crop 大豆作物
single crop 单季作物
low-yielding crop 低产作物
high-yielding crop 高产作物
leguminous crop 豆科作物
black crop 豆类作物
non-woody plants 非木本作物
cover crop 覆盖作物
cereal crop 谷禾类作物
white crop 谷类作物
dry crop 旱地作物

vegetable crop 蔬菜作物
tuber crop 薯类作物
double crop 双季作物
rice crop 水稻作物
fruit crop 水果作物
wet crop 水田作物
fodder crop 饲料作物
herding horses 牧马
cattle pasture 牧牛场
pastoral area 牧区
herdsman 牧民
tending sheep 牧羊
sheep pasture 牧羊场
stock raising 牧业

U 汽车业 Unit 4 Automobiles

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. Having experienced a “Golden Period” in the 2005, China automobile market is influenced by more industrial policies in 2006.
2005 年中国汽车市场经历了汽车销售的“黄金时代”后,一些产业政策影响了 2006 年的市场。
2. Since 1999, the rapid growth of medium and large passenger vehicles brought about another automotive investment fever.
从 1999 年起,大、中容量汽车的走俏带动了汽车生产的快速发展。
3. In the global market, it is impossible for automobile manufacturers with an annual sale of less than 1 million units to survive independently.
在全球市场,一个年均销售低于 100 万辆的汽车制造商是不能独立生存的。
4. Auto part, as a sub-branch of automobile industry, contributes a lot to the development of China's auto industry.
汽车零部件业,作为汽车制造业的一个分支,为中国的汽车业发展做出了很大贡献。
5. The first is part plants affiliated to large automotive groups.
首先是大汽车产商旗下的零部件工厂。
6. The second is state-owned part manufacturers, most of which are acquired due to long-term poor management.
第二是大都长期疏于管理的国有汽车零部件厂家。



7. The third is private companies, most of which are developing quickly and shoulder the future of China's auto part industry to some extent.
第三个是私营企业,他们发展非常迅速,并在一定程度上肩负着中国汽车零部件业发展的重任。
8. After entry into WTO, China's automotive industry encounters quite a lot global impact.
中国入世后,汽车制造业受到了来自全球的冲击。
9. At present, foreign invested auto part enterprises have accounted over 500 in China.
现在投资于中国的外资汽车零部件厂家有 500 多家了。
10. Since 2000, the demand in China's auto air bag market has been increasing at an average speed of more than 200% every year.
从 2000 年起,汽车气囊的需求每年以 200% 的速度增加。



Wonderful Paragraph 精彩片段

Paragraph 1

A 个性化汽车 Auto Individualists

Young adults are becoming a major influence on auto consumption in China. This might explain the huge success, reminiscent of that of its British cousin the Austin Mini half a century ago, of the slightly squat QQ mini in its appealing range of colors.

Today's younger motorists take every opportunity to add individual touches, such as broad wheels, speed stripes and transfers, to their cars that make them instantly identifiable, and accessorizing does not stop at the exterior. EL (ectroluminescent) ornamentation, reasonably priced at RMB 100 per item, is the very latest in automobile interior design. BLB (block light blue) lighting on the EL strips lining the interior edge of college student Li Jing's car doors gives them an interestingly ghostly shimmer.

The desire for a car that complements its driver's personality and stands out in the parking lot has been noticed and taken on by automakers. The Volvo YCC, which had its premier at the 2006 Geneva show, is tailor-made for female drivers, and this June Shanghai Maple Automobiles will start producing China's first woman-targeted car, the Haixuan. Its design takes into account feminine preferences, from its color selection of pea green, cream and crimson, to its feminine-friendly seats and special compartment for a change of shoes, not to mention back-up radar.

Paragraph 2

L 低排量汽车的盛行 **Low Emission Cars on the Up**

Technological improvements in past years have made China-produced lower emission family saloons safer, sturdier and more theft-resistant, as well as cheaper. Sales of low-emission cars in Beijing have noticeably risen since April 1, 2006. Hao Dianying, deputy general manager of North Market, Beijing's largest auto dealer, attributes this phenomenon to all-time high oil prices. He believes low-and medium-emission autos have dominated auto market sales since the beginning of 2006, because, "... they sell at a lower price, cost less to maintain, and consume less fuel."

Mrs. Jiang is one example of an economy-seeking consumer who, albeit by default, helps conserve the environment. She drives a car that can go 100 kilometers on just seven liters of gasoline, and pays no more than RMB 600 for oil, half of that for bigger cars, during an average 2 000—kilometer month. Mrs. Jiang's smaller car also costs her less in tax and insurance.

Experienced auto salesman Mr. Liu recalls the changes in China's auto market over the past decade: "A few years ago, a car costing RMB 60 000 would be equipped with nothing more than a basic engine and gearbox. Today, it comes with ABS, airbag, central locking and even a CD player and electric windows, all for the same price and with sleeker bodywork to boot."



China's traditional conformity and elite connotations as regards car ownership are fast disappearing. The car is both an accepted and expected aspect of new households, as well as an expression of individuality.

Paragraph 3

C 2006 年, 中国汽车价格月调查报告 China's Monthly Car Price Monitoring Report, 2006

In April 2006, car models like Xiali, Geely, Lubao, KIA Qianlima, Sedan, Palio, Santana, Excelle, Cerato, Santana 3000, EPIC, Sonata, Accord, Mondeo, Mazda, Regal and Bluebird, saw their prices greatly decline compared with that of March, while the prices of large-emission car models like Reiz, Crown, Audi, BMW and Benz increased sharply due to the adjustment of consumption tax.

In April 2006, the price index of passenger cars in China decreased by 0.50% compared with that of March. Because April is close to the “golden week” beginning on May 1st, in order to expand the sales, all automobile vendors enhanced their promotion effort. In addition, with the implementation of the new consumption tax, the price of low-emission cars decreased, resulting in a overall decrease of car prices.

Affected by the implementation of new consumption tax, in April 2006, the price of imported cars increased by a large margin, up 1.44% on average compared with that of March, where the increase rate were 1.23%, 1.84%, 1.77% and 1.23% in Beijing, Shanghai, Tianjin and Guangdong respectively.

Consumers are increasingly rational when buying cars. Although consumers generally believe that car price would somewhat decrease during “Golden Week”, however, it had little influence on consumers' plans to buy cars.

With the implementation of new consumption tax, the price of high-emission cars have increased noticeably. However, high-emission cars are considered as symbols of identification and status for some Chinese consumers, and price is not an important factor for their purchase decision.

On the whole, consumers disagree with the price rise of taxis. The taxi price increase will make consumers take illegal taxies, or other means of transport such as subway or public buses.

Paragraph 4

C 中国汽车安全气囊制造业报告 China's Auto Air Bag Industry Report

Since 2000, the demand in China's auto air bag market has been increasing at an average speed of more than 200% every year. By 2004 the total market scale had reached nearly 4 million sets. Currently, there are nearly 20 Chinese domestic enterprises are producing air bags with a total output more than two million sets.

The auto air bag enterprises in China are basically divided into two groups, foreign-funded and domestic enterprises. Foreign-funded enterprises are mainly represented by Autoliv, Plast, Takawa, Mobis ect, those are controlling 80% shares of the total market, especially for the middle and high end markets.

The Chinese domestic companies are mainly represented by Jinheng of Jinzhou City, East Joy Long, BYD of Shanghai, their production only accounting for 15% market shares, and their products are mainly used in economical passenger vehicles.

After the peak of Air Bag importation, there was a negative growth in imports during the first half of 2006.

Since the end of 2004, multinational air bag enterprises have invested in the production of Air Bag components in China, which has enhanced the ability of local component supply. By 2007, more than 80% of Air Bag components will be manufactured locally.

Paragraph 5

C 中国吉利集团 China Geely Group

Today Geely, the company Li Shufu founded 20 years ago, is getting



ready to sell Americans a “high quality” family sedan for “less than ten thousand dollars.” The number eight is lucky to the Chinese, hence 2008 will be Geely’s breakout year on the American market, promises Li Shufu. America will get the fifth generation of Geely’s CK sedan, says Li. He’s hired John Harmer, a former US senator, as the CEO of the automaker’s US subsidiary. Geely wants to sell in the US by late 2008, but suddenly every privately owned Chinese automaker seems to want to get there too. Auto impresario Malcolm Bricklin has set 2008 as the date Americans will drive Cherys, the Chinese sedans he’s been hired to lead into the US. A hard-working design team at Chery has come up with a seven-seater people carrier called the New Crossover. Hebei-based Great Wall Motors has also been throwing shapes with the Hover CUV, its latest sports utility vehicle.

Prices are kept low because Li has only recently begun to spend significantly on R&D. Up to now Geely has avoided investment by styling car bodies similarly to models produced at local joint venture companies and approaching the parts suppliers to those joint ventures. A new 400—person R&D center was opened last year to come up with better design and technology but on the firm’s Ningbo-based assembly line much of the work is done by hand, with forklifts and trolleys darting in and out to feed the assembly line. Management zooming in and out on small pickup trucks add to a sense of productive chaos that hyper-kinetic Chinese executives like Shufu seem most comfortable in.

Paragraph 6

L生活超乎想像 **Life Beyond Expectation**

Geely has plenty to do on the comfort, safety and technology of its cars before American motorists will be allowed a test drive. But the company’s export figures tell a hopeful story. Total exports of 12 000 cars in 2005 represents a fast jump on the 5 000 cars it sold abroad the previous year. At home, Geely accounts for a 4.7 percent share of the China market in 2005. Toyota is barely on four percent and Mazda is on similar figures.



Ford holds 2.5 percent.

Geely's "Life Beyond Expectation!" slogan has gone down well with China's thrifty white-collar families seeking wheels and some face. Thrifty Americans will be able to buy a Geely for between US \$8 000 and US \$10 000, says Li, clearly relishing an underdog image. None of his domestic peers, he points out, had the nerve to show cars at any of the world's major annual auto shows, until Geely took five cars to Frankfurt in September 2005 and Detroit in February 2006.

But the quality of his cars hasn't always matched Li's promises and his bravado. Geely has scored poorly on looks, and has been accused of turning out ugly hodge-podges of lifted designs. Li has also been accused of borrowing more than a business model from Japanese marques. Toyota is suing Geely for copyright infringement while the centerpiece of Geely's offerings at both shows, the CD, a sports coupe, has been compared unfavorably to a Hyundai. A 54-hp bright green five-door HQ meanwhile "wore some of the waviest body panels this side of a demolition derby," wrote one Detroit critic.

A reputation for low-quality materials and poor workmanship—even its luxury-level Maple Marindo 303 has been ridiculed in the trade press—will take fixing in the image-conscious West. But then Japanese cars were also jeered when they first came to the United States. Li meanwhile is looking after the people who made him big. New plants under construction in poorer south-central provinces of Hunan and Gansu will keep production costs down and bring lost-cost Geely staples closer to the unfussy masses it had always promised to serve. And if the American dream turns sour, there's going to be plenty more room in China for small cars. A recent circular from China's policy-making State Development and Reform Commission, since approved by the government, proposes incentives for manufacturers of environmentally-friendly and economical cars. Sounds like Geely country.



F福特汽车及其环境(1) **ord Autos and the Environment(1)**

In addition to the advanced technologies and management methods that transnational corporations have brought to China, they have also introduced many corporate concepts, most notably that of corporate accountability/responsibility. Since 2000, Ford Motor (China) Ltd. has awarded RMB 1 million (US \$ 125 000) annually to those making outstanding contributions to environmental protection. The award, given with the aim of promoting active environmental protection, has been commended throughout Chinese society.

Most people are aware that automobiles are a main source of environmental pollution, yet cars are indispensable within a modern society. As a leading auto manufacturer, Ford is aware of its responsibility to lessen the damage that the internal combustion engine wreaks. One of its environmental protection endeavors is the Ford Motor Conservation and Environmental Grants.

From 2000 to 2003, Ford's losses hit US \$ 10 billion, but it was nevertheless during this period that the Ford Motor Conservation and Environmental Grants came to China. Bill Ford, great grandson of the company's founder Henry Ford and current chairman of Ford Motor Company, personally approved the award.

After six years of effort and an investment of RMB 15 million, 95 conservation projects have now been funded. They include rescuing endangered species, fighting desertification, tree planting, ecological surveys, and environmental education. This Ford-built platform has given Chinese NGOs and individuals a greater opportunity to participate in environmental protection activities and also helped to raise public awareness on the issue. The grants provide further incentive for all to care for the environment. The Seventh Ford Motor Conservation and Environmental Grants, whose theme is "Innovation, Development and Harmony between Humanity and Environ-

ment,” were launched nationwide on April 18, 2006. The awards ceremony will be held in late September.

Paragraph 8

F 福特汽车及其环境(2) **Ford Autos and the Environment(2)**

Ford's activities have won the company praise and admiration in all sectors of Chinese society. In 2005, the Ford Motor Company won the “Best Corporate Citizen Behavior Award” for the second time, in recognition of its active promotion of environmental protection. In 2006, the China Environmental Protection Foundation awarded Ford the “China Environmental Award Corporate Environmental Protection Green Oriental Award,” making it the first foreign enterprise ever to have won it.

Yet the Ford Motor Conservation and Environmental Grants are not simply an American concept transferred to China. It has been adapted to the country's situation.

Kenneth Hsu, vice-president of the Ford Motor (China) Ltd., explains, “The main difference is that in China the grant is called an ‘award,’ while in other countries it is termed a ‘donation.’ In countries other than China, grants are given to selected individuals and entities. In China they have a more competitive ethos, being awarded to people or enterprises that have made the most effective contribution to environmental protection. The grants thus single out unknown heroes, support conservationists, and arouse environmental protection awareness in the whole community. In the coming years we will consider setting a theme for each year that reflects China's most serious environmental problem.”

In addition to its efforts within environmental protection, the Ford Motor Company performs its social responsibility in an all-round way. “I believe that there is a difference between a good and a great enterprise. A good enterprise provides excellent products and services for its customers, while a great enterprise not only provides products and services, but also does its best to make this world a better one,” said Bill Ford, CEO and chairman of



Ford Motor Company.

Paragraph 9

C 中国汽车零部件业报告 China's Auto Part Industry Report

Together with the development of China's economy, relatively rapid growth has been maintained in China's auto part market in the recent years. Currently, there are about 5 000 large part enterprises in China, whereas 15% of these enterprises get a monthly profit of 50 million yuan. Part cost takes up over 70% of the total auto cost; therefore, the development of auto part industry directly influences the automotive industry development. Only continuously increase in auto part sales revenue certainly can a boom in China's automotive industry be ensured. Auto part, as a sub-branch of automobile industry, contributes a lot to the development of China's auto industry.

After entry into WTO, China's automotive industry encounters quite a lot global impact, as foreign auto part manufacturers are attracted by the broad market in China and accelerate their steps into China's market. At present, foreign invested auto part enterprises have accounted over 500 in China. A market share from transnational part manufacturers has exceeded 20%. Facing such fiercely completion, China's auto part industry is in urgent need of improving the backward situation of small scale and low concentricity.

Paragraph 10

F 中国汽车零部件生产商的四种类型 Four Types of China's Auto Part Manufacturers

China's auto part manufacturers can be divided into the following four types: the first is part plants affiliated to large automotive groups. Depending on state-owned parent groups, these plants are accustomed to China's traditional plan production mode and deviates from market orientation in price mechanism. The second is state-owned part manufacturers,

most of which are acquired due to long-term poor management. The third is private companies, most of which are developing quickly and shoulder the future of China's auto part industry to some extent. The fourth is small factories. Due to the old management system and low-level quality guarantee system, these factories can hardly exist, not to mention develop. Most likely they will be out of the market or be acquired in the near future.

Paragraph 11

对汽车零部件业重组与合并的鼓励 Incentives for Merger and Reorganization of Auto Part Industry

Profit shrinking is the fundamental reason. In the first quarter of 2005, profits of automotive industry decreased about 10 billion yuan year on year, down by 60%. Influenced by the stagnation of automotive assembly industry and the rising of steel price, it is the first time in the past ten years that the profit has declined. In the first half of 2006, many automotive assembly plants started to lower the price of part to 50% utmost. While the unit cost of compact sedans increases 1 000 yuan due to the gradually rising price of materials. In this situation the part manufacturers are under more pressure, heating up the competition between assembly plants and part manufacturers. However in the domestic market, a big majority of auto part manufacturers are suffering the double pressure of the rising price of materials from the market and the decreasing price of auto part from assembly plants therefore it is quite difficult to develop independently further. In contrast, such "pressure" has little impact on foreign-funded auto part manufacturers in China. Having patent and unique skill of their own, they are more freely to resist price risks from the market and even to expand their market scales and extend their distribution network. They win a lot in negotiations with Chinese local manufacturers and are more active than ever. Chinese local manufacturers took measures to diminish the pressure through adjusting and optimizing resource allocation, but seem in vain. In the long run, it is an inevitable trend for Chinese local manufacturers to merge and to re-



organize.

Secondly, monopolization of foreign capital also threatens local auto part manufacturer. Foreign capital has obtained large market share in passenger-vehicle part market in China. Currently, foreign capital takes over 60% in China's auto part market. Foreign enterprises have sole markets of some auto parts, such as high-end electronic control, fuel injection system, transducer, brake system, steering system, etc. With an increase of total registrations, it is undoubted that the auto part industry will develop. While the best solution for Chinese local auto part manufacturer is to merge and reorganize.

Thirdly, the features of domestic auto part enterprise also decide their reorganization in the future. Along with the more intense market competition, problems caused by small scale, low concentricity and disorderly competition become more serious. Thereby, the government need support more, help R & D and accelerate the production of independent intellectual property right products; domestic manufacturers must integrate to complement each other and allocating resources rationally under the direction of market. Only in this way can they compete with foreign investors for a better market share.



Cultural Links

文化链接

中国汽车业四大发展趋势

第一:大众消费时代来临,寻常百姓能圆有车梦

预计今后 10—15 年,中国将成为全球最大的汽车市场,年销量达到 1700 万—2000 万辆,汽车保有量超过 1 亿辆。

第二:供需平衡即将打破,汽车产业有望整合

我国汽车需求每年以超过 16% 的速度递增,其中轿车需求增长将更快。随着汽车年需求量及产量快速增长,汽车市场越来越吸引人们的眼球。一方面,全国各地大兴汽车生产企业;另一方面,国际汽车巨头对中国市场虎视眈眈。

第三:高中低档产品更加丰富,外形色彩渐趋靓丽多彩

一方面,汽车业在庞大的中国市场快速兴起,我国又是一个有着 13 亿人口的大国,市场需求是多种多样的;另一方面,国际品牌的加入,部分车型或款式保持与国际市场同步。这样,高中低档汽车新品的不断推出,外形、色彩、价格、性能的大比拼,难免让人眼花缭乱。在广大的消费者有着更多选择的同时,专家提示:买车应遵循一条不变的规律,就是“合适的才是最好的”。

第四:经济实用车型增加,加大消费者购买欲望

经济型车,顾名思义,就是经济实用的汽车。其基本特点无外乎燃料费用少、耐用、易操作、返修率低、没有不必要的豪华设备,把这些特点集中起来就是一句话:“车好养”。国家经贸委发布的汽车工业“十一五”规划中明确提出,轿车重点发展排量小的,百公里油耗达到国内先进水平,符合国家安全、节能、排放法规及私人用车要求的经济型轿车。

Vocabulary 妙词连珠

chartered bus 包车	motorcycle 摩托车
taxi 出租汽车	sports car 跑车
electromobile 电瓶车	cabriolet 篷式汽车
bullet-proof car 防弹小汽车	three-wheeled cab 三轮出租车
de luxe limousine 高级轿车	private car 私人小汽车
workers' carrier 班车	saloon 小轿车
motor cabin 机动三轮车	minibus 小型客车
moped 机器脚踏两用车	compact 小型汽车
jeep 吉普车	school bus 校车
learner-driven vehicle 教练车	camper 野营车辆
police car 警车	clinic car 医疗车
ambulance 救护车	tourist coach 游览车
bus 客车	command car 指挥车
streamlined sedan 流线型轿车	moped 助力车



U 能源 Unit 5 Energy



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. China generating equipment industry will still see a large market space in the long run.
从长期来看,中国的电力产业还有很大市场空缺。
2. China is now speeding up the pace of city-building.
中国正在加快城市建设步伐。
3. Meanwhile, the income level of city residents are improving constantly.
同时,城镇居民的收入正稳步增长。
4. In 2006, the direction of water marketization reformation is clear and definite.
2006 年水利改革的市场化方向是清晰而明确的。
5. Great business potential lies in China water market.
中国用水市场的商机潜力很大。
6. In 2005, China totally generated 2474.7 billion kWh with a year-on-year growth rate of 12.8% .
2005 年中国发电量达 24 747 亿千瓦时,年增长 12.8% 。
7. In terms of nuclear power generation, China will advance from the moderate development strategy to accelerating development strategy.
关于核能源问题,中国政府会从原来的保守政策转向积极发展政策。
8. Especially in the developed coastal areas with heavy power load, nuclear power will become the backbone of the power structure there.

特别是在经济发达能源紧缺的地区,核能将作为其能源的支柱。



Wonderful Paragraph

精彩片段

Paragraph 1

C 中国能源业(1) China's Energy Industry(1)

China's energy industry, along with the rest of its economy, is developing in leaps and bounds. Power shortage has presented a formidable problem for China in recent years, providing certain challenges to the country's budding industrial mechanism. But recent shortages by no means reflect a fundamental lack of energy resources that will spell an enduring handicap. On the contrary, projects in the energy sector are underway across the map, and China's supply of power is set to reach a glut as early as 2007, overtaking even the current ferocious rate of growing energy demand.

Foreign-investment opportunities exist ranging from bringing traditional power generation and transmission equipment plants into the twenty-first century to exciting prospects in renewable and earth-friendly resources on a scale yet unseen.

China's main energy source is coal by quite a sizable margin, accounting for upwards of 65% of the country's total energy consumption, compared to around 25% for the rest of the world. China is largely selfsufficient in terms of coal reserves and leads the world in both consumption and production.

But coal presents several problems, one of them being its impact on the environment and the related costs of cleanup and healthcare. Power shortages also sometimes stem from transport network capacity problems which delay coal shipments.

A popular solution to coal transportation problems in recent years has



been the placement of power plants close to coalfields or ports, allowing for coal to be converted straight to electricity and delivered to consumers over power lines instead of rail lines.

Solutions to environmental problems lie both in reducing the role of coal in China's energy plans and in finding ways to use coal more cleanly. Methods such as gasification and liquefaction, coal washing, and cleaner coking technology are increasingly being explored.

In 2003, China surpassed Japan as the world's second largest importer of oil. But Beijing officials are understandably wary of developing a dangerous reliance on the potentially unstable foreign oil supply. China's current standing oil reserves amount to around 18 billion barrels, just over three days of national consumption. In comparison, the United States maintains about two months worth of oil in standing reserves. Attention is being focused on developing China's domestic oil reserves to equal 30 days worth of imported oil by 2008.

About half of China's petroleum imports come from the Middle East, and Chinese energy planners are looking for a greater diversification of foreign oil supplies that will be more resistant to political factors. Other oil sources being pursued include pipeline projects with Russia and Central Asian countries as well as imports from Africa and South America.

Paragraph 2

C中国能源业(2) **China's Energy Industry(2)**

Domestic sources, however, still account for around two thirds of oil consumption. Traditional fields are located in China's northeast, while a number of newer sources are under development. Rich offshore supplies exist in the Bohai Sea, the large gulf that stretches inland within less than 200 km of Beijing, in the Pearl River Delta near Guangdong, and East and South China Seas. Potential for oil extraction is the underlying root of enduring territorial disputes among countries surrounding the South China Sea. Xinjiang in China's far west holds significant oil production capacity; but the

major obstacle of delivery to the East still exists.

China's oil market opened somewhat in the early years of the 21st century with the listing of its three largest oil industry firms Sinopec, CNPC and CNOOC. Major investors in the companies include Shell, BP and ExxonMobil, but the majority stake remains in the hands of the Chinese state.

Hydroelectric power, which already accounts for nearly 20 percent of China's energy mix, has the potential to grow further. The flagship project is the Three Gorges dam on the Yangtze River, the world's largest hydroelectric project. Due to be fully operational in 2009, the dam began producing electric power in 2003. Several major dams are placed along China's second largest river, the Yellow River to the North, and smaller power generation facilities are in operation on just about all of China's waterways, but primarily in southwestern and south-central areas.

Natural gas, so far only accounting for 3% of China's energy mix as compared to an average of 22% in developed countries, is the most important new introduction to China's energy mix. With its low environmental impact, gas is an attractive alternative to coal in China's heavily polluted environment. Gas fields mimic the general layout of oil sources located in northeastern and north-central China and in offshore locations up and down the coast.

Paragraph 3

N核能源 Nuclear-generated Power

A relatively inexpensive option nuclear power is another area in which China is seeing significant growth. Nuclear-generated power, a source of 23 billion kilowatthours in 2003, is projected to total 66 billion kilowatthours in 2010. China's geography includes abundant supplies of uranium and ample and non-controversial space for nuclear byproduct disposal. Nuclear plants are currently in operation in Guangdong and Zhejiang, with plant projects under construction or in planning in every coastal province as far north as Shandong.



China is in an unparalleled position to incorporate renewable and earth-friendly energy into its energy supply scheme. The central government has invested funds on the development of wind power, a resource with great potential in Inner Mongolia and the northeast, as well as coastal and even offshore locations.

Solar power is less of an option on a large scale, given the still relatively high cost of production, beyond the widespread use of roof solar panels by farmers to power water heaters.

Until the late 1990s, China's energy structure was essentially a single centrally controlled monopoly, overseen and nurtured for years by former premier Li Peng, which ironically fostered a regional approach to energy issues. There were deep inefficiencies and shortages in many parts of the country such as Guangdong, with huge energy demands but with few local energy resources. In recent years, in line with national policy of creating more competitive markets, local interests have been overcome with the establishment of a national grid allowing for the transmission of power from remote provinces to the energy-hungry coastal provinces.

The effect on the energy industry of listings and partnerships with foreign investors is an irreversible shift towards transparency and more effective regulation and management. In short, China's energy sector is both in need of foreign assistance and increasingly accessible to foreign companies.

Paragraph 4

C 中国的废物回收业 China's Recycling Industry

Renewable resources refer to so called waste materials generated in the course of daily life or manufacturing that have degraded in value but can be recycled and re-used. Substituting these resources for primary raw materials reduces energy consumption and pollution levels. It is hence little wonder that the recycling industry, as the most important step in the development of a recyclable economy, has received strong support from govern-

ments around the world.

Here in China, renewable resources have proven vital to some major industries. They account for 26 percent of raw materials consumed by the steel industry, more than 20 percent of those used in the non-ferrous metals industry, and some 50 percent of those used in the papermaking industry.

Yet China's recycling industry remains in its infancy, and teething problems abound. They include the low quality of labor, small-scale operation, a yawning technological gap, secondary pollution and a low processing ratio. Prior to 2001, there were only 5 000 to 6 000 recycling businesses nationwide. But when the government abolished the waste collection certification system and formulated special tax policies in 2002, the number of recycling enterprises exploded, particularly in the coastal areas of southeast China. Today, there are about 60 000 to 70 000 such enterprises in China, employing more than 10 million people.

Despite the industry's being largely propelled by government policies, poor regulations and management caused chaos in its operation. A series of problems emerged for society, the environment and public facilities. Motivated by profit alone, most of the small-scale operators produced even more secondary pollution and waste.

Paragraph 5

T 清远示范基地 **he Qingyuan Demonstration Base**

The recycling industry in Qingyuan City has a history of 20 years. Since its inception, it has grown into a largescale industry with local characteristics and an excellent reputation for collection, dismantling and processing waste materials.

Some RMB 1.5 billion has been invested in the China Qingyuan Recycling Resource Demonstration Base, invested and operated by the Qingyuan Huaqing Recycling Resource Investment and Development Co., Ltd, which was co-founded by the China Renewable Resources Development Company and the Guangdong Xinyaguang Electrical Cable Co., Ltd.



After all the projects are completed, the base will be the largest renewable resources collecting, dismantling and processing factory in the world. It will have the capacity to handle 3 million tons of waste hardware, electrical appliances, motors, electric wires, cables, metals and plastics, and produce RMB 50 billion worth of recycled industrial raw materials every year. The first-phase construction, now completed, covers 50 hectares of land.

Featuring unified planning, lawful operations and the implementation of a unified policy, the base is the first in China's recycling industry to boast modernized management with a platform for the exchange of information, labor, logistics, trade, technology and capital. It has centralized sewage and waste treatment plants, and leads the way in training its technicians and workers.

Most recycling enterprises are still small-scale operations with disintegrated management systems. The Qingyuan mode is the exact opposite. And in terms of reducing energy consumption, increasing the processing ratio and reducing secondary pollution, the base is considered a model for others to follow.

Paragraph 6

C中国新能源设备业 **China's Generating Equipment Industry**

China's generating equipment industry will still see a large market space in the long run. During the 11th Five-year Plan period, China will maintain a power construction scale of about 30 ~40 million kW each year. The State will actively engage in the hydropower construction with an installation rate reaching 23% ~25% , and continue to reduce small-sized thermal power station construction while introducing high-parameter, high-efficiency and supercritical thermal power units with single-unit capacity over 300 000 kW , and properly develop the new green power projects like nuclear power, natural gas power, wind-power and solar power.

According to the national development programming of energy re-

source, installed capacity of hydropower will up to 160 million kW by 2010, accounting for some 24% of the total; installed capacity of nuclear power will reach 12.5 million kW, accounting for about 2% of the total. During the 11th Five-year Plan period, the annual average investment in hydropower and nuclear power will be RMB 35 billion and 20 billion respectively.

Although, the investment in hydropower and nuclear power is currently less than that in thermal power, however, the relevant equipment manufacturers still can gain considerable benefit considering the high concentration degree as well as gradual increase rate of nationalization. During the 12th Five-year Plan period (2011—2015), China will further enlarge the investment in hydropower and nuclear power with an average sum of RMB 75 billion and 35 billion per year respectively. By the end of the 12th Five-year Plan period, the installed capacity of hydropower and nuclear power will reach 230 million kW and 36 million kW respectively, accounting for 25% and 4% of the total separately. Wind power will also grow rapidly as a typical renewable resource.

Paragraph 7

P有关新能源设备业的政策 Policies in Generating Equipment Industry

The National Development and Reform Commission released the suggestions on strictly restraining from the unordered construction of power station projects in Nov 2004. The issue of this suggestion and macro control policies has caused some influences, especially on the situation of electricity short and even leading to an over-plus situation. However, generating equipments has still been in short supply around the country since 2005 and such situation remained unchanged even with the high growth rate in the first half of 2006. In particular, the number of large units increased rapidly. Steam units of 600 000 kW were added, which is 17 more than the same period of 2005.

With regard to the industrial policies, foreign investment into equipment manufacturing of thermal power, hydropower and nuclear power are all



encouraged by the government, for instance, the supercritical thermal power units over 600 000 kW.

Generating equipment will develop towards consumption reduction and efficiency improvement. Taking coal-fired power as the examples, at present, coal-fired power units averagely consumes coals of 374 gram per kilowatt-hour, 55 gram higher than world advanced level. So it is crucial for the future development of coal-fired power to enhance conversion efficiency and to save coal resources. One of effective ways to improve the efficiency of coal-fired power units is to increase the proportion of supercritical units. Therefore, the generating equipment with high-level technology will be provided with a promising future.

With the data from National Bureau of Statistics, China Customs and Machinery Industry Federation, this report gives a detailed analysis on production, sales, market, industry structure and import & export of China's generator and units manufactures. It also forecasts its future development and provides power enterprises, power equipment manufactures and investors with valuable reference.

Paragraph 8

C关于中国饮用水问题的报告 **China's Water Affair Report**

The year of 2005 is quite important for China water affair to step towards marketlization. Chinese government takes water price reformation as one of the three major price reformation projects. As waste treatment fee came into collection and the water resource fee was improved in 2004 then in 2005 the water price in main cities rose a lot, which beyond people's expectation. In around 2005, the increase rate of water price in major cities of China, especially in Beijing and Shenzhen etc., the waste treatment fee increased by over 50%. During the "Eleventh Five-Year" period (2006—2010), the water price may continue to rise by 50% ~100%. Such nationwide rise in water price boosts an advancement of water affair towards marketlization.

China is now speeding up the pace of city-building; meanwhile, the income level of city residents are improving constantly, which have become the Long – term driving forces of water affair development. In addition, some monopoly industries, including water industry, are gradually opened up to the social capital and a series of favorable policies are enforced to ensure the successful marketlization of water affair. Private capitals now enter the water market. Along with the document issue of Execute Water Price Reformation and Promote Water Saving by China State Council, the price of water supply in cities and the waste treatment fee will be rationally adjusted to ensure the daily operation of the enterprises and to well-balance their profit. The reformation on water price also lays good foundation for investment into water industry. In 2006, the direction of water marketlization reformation is clear and definite. The water market is gradually opened, and the overall framework of franchising operation and government supervision system is to be enhanced.

Naturally not only positive factors may act, but also negative factors such as fierce competition, capital operation risk and investment risk may have profound effect on the development of China's water industry. Up till now China has been the member of WTO for 4 years and with the further open of China market, foreign capital will speed up into China's water industry. It is now a real challenge for domestic water companies to win the competition against the foreign rivals.

Paragraph 9

W水供应 ater Supply

According to the “Eleventh Five-Year” Plan, the reconstruction of old water supply network which is over 50 years in service and the rebuilding of severely damaged water supply network in old city zones should be completed by the end of 2007. By 2010 the city water supply coverage should be no less than 95%. Waste treatment rate should be no less than 70% in designated cities and areas and the recycled water utilization rate in water



shortage cities should reach 20% .

Great business potential lies in China water market. The annual production of water supply is to increase from the current value of RMB 60 ~70 billion to RMB 150—200 billion in 2010. The annual growth of the total water affair market is to maintain at about 15% . China is now reforming the water market, as well as the water price to create a better circumstance for investment and development. The next 5 ~10 year is the key period to the development of China water affair.

Paragraph 10

C 中国电业报告 **China's Electric Power Industry Report**

In 2005, China totally generated 2474.7 billion kWh with a year-on-year growth rate of 12.8% , which is lower than 14.8% in 2003 and 13.6% in 2004 yet still increase by quite a large margin. In the aspect of power consumption, the year 2005 still saw fast growth but somewhat slowed down. The whole society of China consumed 2468.9 billion kWh of electric power in 2005 with a year-on-year increase of 13.5% , declining 1.4% compared to growth rate in 2004.

As the Chinese government leveled up the requirements of environmental protection and established the energy policies of “thrift first, self-independent, taking coal as the basis to achieve multi-polar development and constructing a steady, economical and clean energy supply system” during the Eleventh Five-Year Plan (2006—2010) , nuclear power generation, wind power generation, hydropower generation and other renewable energy power generation will speed up during this period.

Paragraph 11

N 核能源 **Nuclear Power**

In terms of nuclear power generation, China will advance from the moderate development strategy to accelerating development strategy. Nu-



clear power will play an even more important role in China's future power development. Especially in the developed coastal areas with heavy power load, nuclear power will become the backbone of the power structure there. China has planned to build up another 30 sets of nuclear power generator within 15 years with total installed capacity of 36 to 40 million kWh, accounting for about 4% of China's total installed capacity of the electric power industry.

In the long-term industrial plan, the National Development and Reform Commission of China has adjusted the objective of the wind power installed capacity for 2010 from 4 million kilowatts to 5 million kilowatts, and the objective for 2020 has adjusted from 20 million kilowatts to 30 million kilowatts. Conservatively estimated, when the factory price of every kilowatt of equipment is RMB 6 000, the market value will total RMB 30 billion by the year 2010.

China is speeding up its hydropower development and its hydropower installed capacity will reach 250 million kilowatts by the year 2020. This means that 46% ~47% of China's water resource will be exploited and utilized then.

Paragraph 12

C 中国燃气业
China's Gas Industry

Through accurate data and full elaboration, it describes the structure of China's gas industry and competition situation in the industry from various angles. Meanwhile, it presents assessment of major enterprises' business strategy and competitiveness.

It could especially point out the following: China's gas industry holds huge market demand and bright prospects. The gas market is entering a rapid expansion period. With the exploitation and utilization of natural gas resources, the development of the urban gas industry has got into a new era. The inconvenience and environmental pollution caused by the use of coal have partially been resolved. Progress has been made in gas produc-

tion, distribution and application technology. With the entry of foreign enterprises and private enterprises, monopoly will give way to fierce market competition. Although it is neglected for the time being due to monopoly, brand competition will intensify in the future. Among market segments, coal gas will fade out of the urban gas industry, while LPG still has some room to grow. In particular, in areas where natural gas cannot be distributed, LPG will become the main development direction of the urban gas industry. In the next few years, the urban gas industry will keep improving, gradually reaching the level of developed countries.

We look into problems that existed in the development of China's gas industry in the past and major factors affecting its development in the future. On such basis, it presents qualitative and quantitative forecast of the industry. Finally, it provides development strategy and recommendations for the government, enterprises and investors respectively.



Cultural Links

文化链接

中国能源可持续发展六大战略

一、长期坚持节能优先战略

加入 WTO 以后,中国的劳动力成本可能还将在相当长的一个时期内保持竞争力,但资源性的成本,包括土地的价格,特别是能源的成本将不具有竞争性。中国可能还要经过二三十年的努力,才能在能源技术的平均水平上,赶上国际先进水平。

二、适应终端能源需求的变化趋势,实现能源结构的转变,加快发展天然气

三、从实际出发,实施煤炭的清洁利用

目前煤炭供应过程和转换过程中,有大量可以立即行动而且对煤炭的清洁利用有明显实效的事情可做。如煤炭的筛选和洗选,更加合理的煤质管理和配送,型煤的利用,水煤浆利用等等,都大有潜力。

四、系统考虑电源结构,水电、核电要实施长期的发展计划

首先要尽量利用水利资源。中国水利资源丰富,目前利用率很低,发展潜力巨大。水电项目可以很好地和防洪、抗旱、农业灌溉结合起来,取得

更大的综合社会经济效益。在考虑是否发展天然气发电时,不但要在不同电源方案中进行综合比较,还应该对同一能源的不同使用方向的合理性进行比较分析。核电是一种可靠的清洁能源,核电的安全性已经达到很高的水平。在现有技术条件下,核废料的处理也可以得到妥善的解决。

五、推动环境保护,为可持续发展能源战略的实施创造必要的外部条件

为了实现可持续发展的能源战略,应该在能源发展的各个环节充分考虑环保的需要。

六、做好可再生能源发展的战略安排

中国在可再生能源发展方面做了很多工作。过去的重点放在解决农村和边远地区的能源供应上。近几年来,现代商品化可再生能源逐渐成为发展的重点。其中,太阳能热水器已形成规模市场,大型风力发电也有多种示范。

Vocabulary 妙词连珠

energy by wave motion 波浪运动能

energy-storage parameter 储能参量

energy-storage device 储能装置

energy from earth's interior

地球内部能

electron 电子能量

energy of molecule 分子能量

energy-rich chemical fuel

高能化学燃料

energy demand for industrialized

countries 工业化国家的能源需求

energy utility management

公用能源管理

energy in transition 过渡时期能源

energy by ocean current 海流能

energy by thermal gradient 温差能

energy content 含能量

energy-consuming industry 耗能工业

energy conservation measure

节能措施

energy-saving scope 节能范围

energy conservation programme

节能规划

energy conservation plan 节能计划

energy-saving technique 节能技术

energy conservation equipment

节能设备



energy-saving investment	节能投资	renewable from of energy	可再生形态能源
energy of absolute zero	绝对零级能量	energy band	能带
renewable ocean resource	可再生海洋能源	waste-heat boiler	废热锅炉
renewable energy form	可再生能形态	waste-heat recovery	废热回收
renewable energy resource	可再生资源	waste-heat utilization	废热利用
renewable energy conversion process	可再生能转换工艺	waste-heat energy source	废热能源
renewable solar energy	可再生太阳能	waste recovery power plant	废物动力回收电站
		waste recycling	废物循环回收
		wind-generated electricity	风力发电
		wind generator	风力发电机
		wind power plant	风力发电装置

U 飞机制造

Unit 6 Aviation



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. At present, the reform of civil aviation system is continuously deepening.
现在民用飞机系统的改革正在不断加深。
2. China's air transport industry will gradually enter the stage of rapid growth, and it will go on leading the global growth for a fairly long period in the future.
中国的航空业会进入发展的新阶段,并且在不久的将来就会领先于全球市场。
3. Globalization is altering international business practices, and requiring manufacturers to operate at maximum efficiency.
全球化的进程改变着全球的经济,并且要求生产商必须全力以赴。
4. Therefore, demand for integrated air express services is rising rapidly.
因此,要求全面的飞行服务的呼声越来越强烈。
5. In 2002, 80 percent of the 143 airports in China suffered losses.
2002 年 80% 的航空公司面临着亏损。
6. Considering economic prospects and international comparison, China has a huge potential in developing airport business.
考虑到经济前景及其与国际的比较结果,中国的航空业有着巨大的潜力。
7. The airport construction in China is increasing and the aviation industry also has a prosperous future.
中国的机场建设正在完善,飞机制造业也有着很好的前景。



Wonderful Paragraph 精彩片段

Paragraph 1

○ 中国航空概况 (1) view of Chinese Aviation (1)

Having largely overcome problems of maintenance, safety, ageing fleets, SARS and rampant illegal ticket discounting, China's aviation market is starting to do very well, with probably the fastest growth rates of any market in the world on the back of a huge and increasingly mobile population.

For passenger traffic, rising salaries and a relaxation of overseas travel regulations are helping, while improved infrastructure and China's role as Factory to the World is adding new air cargo volume all the time.

Passengers using Chinese airlines alone are expected to top 100 million for the first time in 2004 (compared with 68 million in 2000), with projected growth estimated at around 8.3% per annum until 2022. Already the second biggest domestic market for air cargo in the world with 1.3 million tonnes moved in 2001, growth is expected to increase annually by 10.3% until 2021. With the industry set to outpace GDP rates by a significant margin, international players are busy on the ground and in the air exploring opportunities.

In 2003, the domestic industry completed a period of consolidation and rationalization that resulted in the creation of three core airline groupings: Air China, China Eastern and China Southern. Both China Eastern and China Southern have stock market listings and Air China hopes to list in 2005. But the efficiency of these airlines remains low by international standards. Revenue per km per employee in 2003 for China Eastern, for instance, was around one third that of Hong Kong-based Cathay Pacific, and China Southern fares only slightly better. A number of factors impact on the poor efficiency ratio—high investment in new planes and personnel training, excess staff, and an inability to hedge against oil prices. Fuel alone accounts

for 25% ~30% of total costs, compared with a 10% ~15% global norm.

The current government policy encourages the purchase of larger trunkline planes and the growth of domestic aircraft manufacturing by imposing higher import duties on regional plane purchases (23% duty compared with 7% for trunkline) as well as charging a single landing fee regardless of plane class. The result is that only 18% of Chinese planes are under 100 seats (compared with 35% in the US) leading to under utilization and wasted expenditure on most domestic routes.

With a total national fleet of only 655 planes in 2003, (American Airlines alone had 854) China is currently the world's largest purchaser of new planes, projected to expand the fleet size to 2 050 by the year 2021. While the main battle for market share is between Boeing and Airbus (with Airbus slowly encroaching on Boeing's 60% market share), niche markets do exist for smaller manufacturers as exemplified by Canada's Bombardier Aerospace Group, which has supplied 25 regional sized planes to a number of Chinese carriers including Shanghai Airlines.

Paragraph 2

中国航空概况(2) **view of Chinese Aviation(2)**

Chinese firms are themselves proving adept at airplane component assembly. Brazil's Embraer is in an assembly plant joint venture in the northern city of Harbin where they have already sold six 45—seater planes to China Southern, and Airbus has committed itself to procurements from local factories worth US \$ 120 million a year by 2010. China also has plans for its own aircraft construction including the manufacture of turboprop airliners. In one venture, the China Aviation Industry Corp One is working with GE to produce regional sized planes for the domestic market. They are hoping to have them in service by 2008.

Although entitled to own up to 49% few foreign investors have chosen to buy into Chinese airlines, nor does this trend seem likely to change in the near future. Foreign airlines however, are very active in China and the



numbers involved will continue to increase. In 2004 China signed its first open skies agreement with Thailand as well as a liberalization agreement with America that will see weekly flights increase from 54 to 249 by 2007 and allow in new carriers and routes. Talks with European countries about a similar agreement are ongoing. In addition, regional airlines are now flying direct to China's second tier cities and both European and American airlines are increasingly involved in code-sharing with Chinese partners.

The open sky/liberalization agreements have come about despite complaints from Chinese airlines who risk losing out to the better services of their foreign competitors.

The government's thinking however, is to the wider picture of increased air traffic and visitor numbers, and in part, a belief that healthy competition will encourage domestic carriers to restructure. China is predicted to become the fourth largest tour destination in the world by 2020 with both the 2008 Olympics and 2010 World Expo acting as landmark events. And by 2020, there are expected to be 100 million outward-bound Chinese tourists a year. Many of these will be traveling by air.

The predicted extra traffic will also have a positive impact on domestic airports, some of which are listed and almost all of which lose money due to under-utilization and poor management. Seen as a must have for any self-respecting city, local governments have tended to spend lavishly on their airport terminals, often employing award winning foreign architects.

Opportunities, though, do exist in the provision of airport and air traffic control equipment. In some cases foreign companies have invested directly in the airports, for example, Lufthansa in the southern city of Shenzhen and French firm Thales won the contract to upgrade the national air traffic control system.

A lack of oversight, though, has led to overcapacity such as exists in the Pearl River Delta where there are now five international airports within a 350 square kilometer zone-Hong Kong, Guangzhou, Shenzhen, Zhuhai and Macau. But overall, observers say there is plenty of room for growth, especially in cargo, as at present the three major hubs of Beijing, Shanghai

and Guangzhou account for 44% of the market, suggesting big potential for other centers. On the other hand, the government is upgrading road and rail links, obvious competitors to airfreight.

One way the government could assist provincial airports is through encouraging the growth of low cost airlines (LCA), a possible area for foreign investment at some point in the future. In 2004, for the first time, 100% privately-funded airlines were permitted to enter the market and already, a number of both cargo and passenger carriers have been formed.

Ticket prices are centrally controlled, but the discount bands were widened in 2004 to 45% below and 20% above the set price. A Chinese equivalent for the low-cost airlines in other markets could tap a whole new, and considerably wider, consumer market. This is not expected in the immediate future due to the impact such an airline could have on the existing operators.

Paragraph 3

C中国航空运输市场(投资分析) China's Air Transport Market (Investment Analysis)

From January to August, 2005, the Total Tonne Kilometer for air transport is 16.646 billion, up 11% compared with the same period of 2004. The Total Passenger Traffic is 89.5172 million persons, up 10% compared with the same period last year. The Total Passenger Kilometers is 131.77409 billion, up 10.5% compared with the same period last year, the Total Freight Tones Carried is 1.9017 million, up 13% as compared with the same period of last year, and the Total Freight Tonnes Kilometers is 4.92079 billion, up 13.2% compared with the same period last year. The total flying hours is 1.76051 million, up 12.2% compared with the same period last year.

At present, the reform of civil aviation system is continuously deepening and the civil aviation market is constantly developing to welcome the world. Stimulated by the growth of China's economy, the upgrade of consuming level, and the liberalization of aviation industry, China's air transport industry will gradually enter the stage of rapid growth, and it will go on



leading the global growth for a fairly long period in the future.

With results from “Eleventh Five-Year Plan” and efforts of Air Transport Research Team of RIC center, this report was made based on consultation and analysis on corporate strategies. It comprises four parts: operational environment of air transport market, forecast on industrial market (2006), development trends of the competitions in air transport, investment opportunities and risks of the industry. Detailed description and argumentation on air transport market such as current condition, development, operation, investment and competition, can be found and guidance for enterprises to understand the trend of the entire industry is provided to help the readers decide a corresponding investment strategy.

Based on data form authoritative channels such as General Administration of Civil Aviation of China, State Information Center and National Bureau of Statistics of China, this report adopts plenty of industrial data from our center and our market research, and holistically applied the quantitative and qualitative analysis methods to provide a detailed, serious, and predictive argumentation on the development trends of China’s air transport industry.

This report concentrates on the investment and business organizations in air transport and the air transport research units. Furthermore, it provides valuable reference for industrial rules and laws researching, industrial policy making and for the financial investment organizations intending to enter air transport or relevant industries.

Paragraph 4

中国航空快递业 China's Air Express Industry

Globalization is altering international business practices, and requiring manufacturers to operate at maximum efficiency. Today’s trading environment is characterized by the following aspects: complex sourcing strategies for raw materials and components, regional even global assembly plants are needed for scale manufacturing, and the application of flexible just-in-

time inventory management to deliver finished products to various markets in time. To remain competitive, manufacturing and service companies in China must turn to the value-added services of the global integrated air express companies. Therefore, demand for integrated air express services is rising rapidly.

It explains in detail the role of the integrated air express industry in China and assesses the commercial, economic and social benefits brought by this vital industry to China.

Paragraph 5

C 中国民用航空运输业市场报告 **China's Civil Aviation Transportation Market Report**

Through accurate data and full elaboration, it describes the structure of China's Civil Aviation Transportation market and features of the demand-supply relationship from various angles. Meanwhile, it examines competition between enterprises in different market segments, presenting assessment of leading enterprises competitiveness.

We especially points out the following: In 2006, China's civil aviation transportation market maintained rapid growth. Growth of the passenger transportation market outpaced that of the freight transportation market. Aviation safety gradually improves. Airline companies are engaged in product, price and service competition. While the three leading groups are dominating the market, local airline companies performance keeps improving.

Paragraph 6

C 中国机场业 **China's Airport Business**

Airport business has a capital-intensive business infrastructure, and is characterized by economic features such as pre-public products, exterior and regional monopoly. Currently, China's airports are suffering losses. In 2002, 80 percent of the 143 airports in China suffered losses. Considering



the three major indices of airport operation-passenger throughput, cargo and posts throughput, and number of take-offs and landings, domestic airports (single or as a whole) are still far behind well-known international airports.

After transferring the right of airport management from Civil Aviation Administration of China (CAAC) to local governments, Chinese airports will be more definitely positioned. A more professional management, a diversification of airport construction capital and main body of investments will be the development trend of the industry.

Considering economic prospects and international comparison, China has a huge potential in developing airport business. The airport construction in China is increasing and the aviation industry also has a prosperous future.



Cultural Links 文化链接

国产大飞机搅动中国民用客机制造业的利益格局

对于中国的民用航空工业而言,2006 年是一个不平静的年份,关于国产大飞机的消息一个接一个。

3 月中旬,在成都飞机工业(集团)有限责任公司召开的“新支线专案研制动员会”上传来消息,首架 ARJ 飞机机头将于 4 月份正式开铆,到年底正式交付。这意味着,第一架拥有中国自主知识产权的“准干线”客机 ARJ21,已经全面转入生产制造阶段。

几乎是同时,在 3 月 14 日的十届全国人大四次会议上,中国国务院总理温家宝宣布,中国将在“十一五”期间适时启动大型飞机研制项目。这是中国政府继上世纪 80 年代首架自主研发的大飞机“运 10”下马之后,第一次公开宣布要造大型飞机。

所谓大型飞机,根据国际上通用的解释,是指起飞总重量超过 100 吨的运输类飞机,包括军用和民用大型运输机,也包括 150 座以上的干线客机。

大飞机项目论证的过程其实就是各部门利益博弈的过程。一位参与了论证的专家说,关于大飞机要不要搞和能不能搞,专家组的意见是一致的,即大飞机一定要搞,而且我国也已经具备了上大飞机的能力。关键的

问题在于,来自不同行业的专家在如何搞方面存在着太多的意见和分歧。

“民航、部队、航空工业等,再加上地方,各个利益集团不仅在观点上,更重要的是在利益上存在着分歧和争议。”这位论证组的专家说。

在大飞机项目并未正式立项的时候,一场关于未来大飞机制造地点的“公关战”似乎就已经打响,并有了所谓“干(线)支(线)之争”“东(上海)西(西安)之争”“军(机)民(机)之争”的说法。与此同时,国外飞机制造商也再次对中国大飞机项目显示出浓厚的兴趣。

Vocabulary 妙词连珠

airliner service 班机业务

irregular flight 不定期航班

long-haul flight 长途航班

short-haul flight 短程航班

regular flight 定期航班

international flight 国际航班

domestic flight 国内航班

flight number 航班号

flight schedule 航班时刻表

air transport service 航空服务

round-the-world air service

环球航空业务

extra flight 加班

passenger flight 客运航班

connecting flight 衔接航班

night flight 夜间航班

through flight 原机直达航班

non-stop flight 直达航班

through air transport 直航业务

medium-haul flight 中程航班

continent-to-continent air service

洲际航空业务

Boeing 747 波音 747

Boeing B 47 波音 B47

commuter airliner 长期票乘客班机

supersonic airliner 超音速班机

scheduled airliner 定期班机

short-range airliner 短程班机



U 电信业 Unit 7 Telecom Industry



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. On December 11, 2001, the first day of China's entry to the WTO, the plan to segment China Telecom was announced.
2001 年 12 月 11 日, 在中国加入 WTO 后的第一天, 宣布了分割中国电信的计划。
2. This was the second plan of its kind since 2000, and even more stringent.
这是 2000 年后的第二个计划, 而且更紧迫。
3. In China, it is not only the telecommunications industry that faces a huge impact from the country's entry into WTO, and neither is it the only industry that is changing.
在中国, 电信业不是加入 WTO 后惟一一个受到冲击和改变的产业。
4. The reality is that China Telecom is a dinosaur, huge but without vitality.
事实上中国电信业是条巨龙, 巨大却缺乏活力。
5. In the years to come, it will be not only the telecommunications industry that enters a new stage, but also, through reform and development, the entire Chinese economy.
在未来两年里, 不仅是中国的电信业将进入一个新阶段, 通过改革与发展, 整个中国经济也会进入一个新阶段。
6. In the first half of 2006, China all together manufactured 212 594 000 mobile handsets, increased by 64.2% compared to the same period of 2005.

2006 年上半年,中国共生产了 212 594 000 部手机,比 2005 年同期增长了 64.2%。

7. As energy source, battery is one of the most important accessories for mobile phones.

作为能量来源的电池是手机的最重要的零部件之一。

8. China's mobile handset game market was undergoing scale development in 2005 and the total market value reached RMB 1.2 billion.
2005 年中国手机游戏市场得到了长足的发展,总销售额达到了 12 亿人民币。



Wonderful Paragraph

精彩片段

Paragraph 1

M 电信产业市场 Market of Telecommunication

China boasts the largest number of fixed line telephone and mobile phone subscribers as well as the largest Internet service market in the world. By mid-2004 there were 310 million mobile phone subscribers and 299 million landline subscriptions across the country-incredible figures when you consider that China's telecommunications system was virtually nonexistent well into the 1980s.

In fact it is precisely the lack of historical infrastructure that has allowed China to basically leapfrog old technology and establish a modern, well-functioning telecom system, albeit one that remains unevenly distributed across the country. Big cities, industrial centers and many larger towns enjoy excellent products and service while, not surprisingly, more rural and less prosperous areas make do with the less advanced options available.

China's telecom market is regarded as the world's most important battleground by many of the big multinationals and is right at the cutting edge of telecom technology. The country's most successful players, such as state-owned China Telecom and workerowned Huawei, are already expan-



ding overseas, opening offices in the US, the UK and Europe. These companies, and especially the large number of Chinese mobile phone and equipment makers, have benefited from cutthroat competition within China, which has forced them to become lean and efficient enough to compete on a global scale.

Paragraph 2

The Competition in Telecommunication

This competition is set to intensify further as China continues to liberalize the industry, according to the rules of its accession into the World Trade Organization (WTO). While all of the world's largest telecom companies manufacture and sell equipment in China, the actual networks are dominated by a small number of state-owned giants. Because China regards the telecom industry as strategic, the country's WTO accession terms retain some protections against foreign firms who were allowed to take 50% ownership of value-added services companies by 2004 but will only be able to own 49% of mobile and fixed-line services companies in 2007 and 2008, respectively.

In preparation for increased competition with the multinational telecom giants China has carried out a series of reforms and liberalizations. In fact, the long march to international competitiveness was properly started in 1994 with the creation of China Unicom as a rival to what was then the country's only telecom provider, China Telecom. This move created a duopoly in which the two companies competed in the area of basic landline services.

Following the formation of the Ministry of Information Industries in 1998, China Telecom was split into four entities—China Telecom, China Mobile, China Paging, and China Satellite—in order to introduce further competition into the sector. In 2001 China Telecom was further split into two regional companies. Following that reform the telecom industry was to be formally shared, and competed in, by China Telecom, China Netcom, China Mobile, China Unicom, China Sat and China Railcom. China Mobile and China Unicom basically compete for mobile subscriptions while the latest incarnation of China Telecom concentrates on fixed lines in Southern China and Chi-

na Netcom controls fixed lines in the North.

Paragraph 3

C 中国电信公司 Chinese Telecommunication Companies

China Unicom, China Telecom and China Mobile have all listed on both the Hong Kong and New York Stock Exchanges and China Netcom, which has put off its listing on a number of occasions, was expected to follow suit before the end of 2004. China Railcom and China Satcom held only a 1.6% market share between them in 2003 and are not expected to list outside China any time soon.

Restructuring has had an enormous effect on the industry. Between 1995 and 2002 the fixed line penetration rate more than tripled and was expected to grow a further fivefold between 2002 and 2005. Prices for long distance and international services have fallen sharply and are now comparable with prices in Western industrial countries.

The example of the popular Xiaolingtong, or “little smart”, service shows just how much competition exists in the industry. The service is basically a glorified portable phone that only works within a given region of China. It is provided by China's fixed line providers, China Telecom and China Netcom, who are not officially allowed to invest in current mobile technology. But because the service provides the basic speech functions of a real mobile phone and is so much cheaper, Xiaolingtong already has 58 million users after only two years of operation and has eaten into the profits of real mobile providers China Mobile and China Unicorn.

These mobile companies are hoping that the long-delayed granting of licenses by the government for third generation (3G) mobile systems will go ahead in mid-2005 and allow them to squeeze out such budget options. Not that they really have much cause for complaint. In 2004, an average of five million people signed up for new mobile subscriptions every month. In 2003, about 200 billion short-text messages (SMS) were sent in China, which translated into approximately RMB 20 billion (US \$ 2.41 billion) in revenues for mobile operators. The number of SMS messages in 2004 was expected to rise to over 300 billion and mobile phone usage is likely to grow



sixfold over the next five years.

If the case of the Chinese mobile phone handset market is anything to go by then there is good reason to believe that China's telecom giants will retain the lion's share of their markets when foreign players gain access in the next few years.

Paragraph 4

F 占据中国市场的国外公司 Foreign Companies in Chinese Market

While foreign companies like Nokia, Motorola and Ericsson previously dominated the market in mobile phones, now more than 40% of the handset market belongs to local companies like Ningbo Bird, Nanjing Panda Electronics, Haier and TCL Mobile.

And China is poised to push foreign competitors out of other sectors of the industry as well. With the government estimating the country will become the world's largest market for semiconductors by 2006 local companies are rushing to develop a strong domestic chip industry while at least a dozen Chinese internet portals have challenged the Chinese versions of Yahoo or Google.

Foreign companies investing in telecommunications, as in most industries, report problems with intellectual property violations and during the WTO accession transition there have been a number of complaints that telecommunications has been a particularly slow industry to meet its obligations.

This probably reflects the close attention the government has paid to what it considers a strategic sector and serves as a warning that even if Chinese companies were not as competitive as they are, it is unlikely the government would allow the market to be dominated by foreign players.

But considering the size of the market and the speed at which it is growing, the Motorolas, Nokias and Ericssons of the world have little choice but to continue to invest in China.

S结构的重组 Structural Reorganization

The idea that China first began to deal with the challenges posed by the WTO in 2001 is a misconception, several years particularly within certain major industries, such as agriculture, finance (banking, insurance, securities), the automobile industry, and telecommunications.

The significance of announcing the plan to segment and reorganize China's communication industry is not, therefore, the ultimate realization of a long-drawn reform. In my opinion, it heralds a whole series of reform plans. These plans have the common characteristic of cultivating vigorous market competition through readjustment within industry, and their purpose is to promote the development of various industries, as well as to help absorb the inevitable economics impact that will occur when overseas firms enter the Chinese market. In the coming years, the terms "segmentation" and "re-organization" will be the most frequently used and closely associated with the "WTO".

Paragraph 6

D“恐龙”的消失 Disappearance of a "Dinosaur"

On December 11, 2001, the first day of China's entry to the WTO, the plan to segment China Telecom was announced. This was the second plan of its kind since 2000, and even more stringent. It entails China Telecom's capital and equipment in 10 northern provinces merging with two other Chinese telecommunications enterprises (China Netcom Corporation Ltd., and China Jitong Netcom Corporation Ltd.), to form the China Network Communications Group Company (China Netcom). China Telecom's southern entities will be reorganized into a new company that will retain the name "China Telecom Group Company". This means that six powerful communications enterprises (the other four being China Mobile, China Unicom, China Railcom and China Sat) will form new competitive matrix, and a large proportion of capital and equipment will be reallocated from the original China Telecom



to other telecom enterprises.

The Ministry of the Information Industry is executing the segmentation, and since February, the reorganized companies have begun to appear one by one.

Within this operation, two principles are followed. First, 30 percent of the national long-distance telecommunications network will be reallocated from the original China Telecom to China Netcom. Second, the local telecommunications network in ten northern provinces will also be reallocated from the original China Telecom to China Netcom. The new China Telecom is to retain local networks in 21 provinces in the south and the west.

Paragraph 7

S分割带来繁荣 **segmentation Brings Prosperity**

When recalling the changes of the past few years, the determination of the Chinese government to transform the telecommunications industry is plain to see, as are the results it has achieved. In 1998, the segmentation of China Telecom, known as the “dinosaur”, began to be discussed. At that time, this company monopolized almost all telecommunications business, such as fixed and mobile telephones, satellite communications and paging services. Consequently there were frequent complains of poor service and inadequate supplies.

Consumers soon become aware of the benefits of the market competition. They saw the price of mobile and fixed communications, and access to the Internet steadily drops. In 2001, a price war was waged among various enterprises, and the discount telephone cards and telecommunications advertising became a common phenomenon. That year, there were new reports every now and then of certain enterprises criticizing their counterparts for their ruthlessly competitive price-cutting tactics, which was a matter for medication by the relevant government department, something hitherto unheard of.

Some analysts predict that once the reorganizations enterprises is complete, the prices of various telecommunication service will fall even faster, and in the wake of such reductions, the rate of development in China's tele-

communications industry will redouble.

Paragraph 8

C 中国移动电话生产商 China's Mobile Handset Manufacturers

In the first half of 2006, China all together manufactured 212 594 000 mobile handsets, increased by 64.2% compared to the same period of 2005, and 6 094 000 PASs (personal access phones), which decreased by 30% compared with the figure of 8 704 000 in the first half of 2005.

This report specifically analyzes the output and domestic sales situation of major mobile handset manufacturers in China in the first half of 2006 and profoundly studies the financial status, production capacity, R&D strategies and organization structure of those manufacturers. It is the best choice for mobile handset manufacturers and investors all over the world to have a strong knowledge of China's mobile handset market.

Paragraph 9

C 中国手机电池产业报告 China's Mobile Phone Battery Industry Report

As energy source, battery is one of the most important accessories for mobile phones. Nowadays, Ni-Cd battery, which born in black-white display mobile phone generation, has exited the market, and NI-MH battery also has little demand. The color display generation leads to wide application of Li-ion battery (Li-ion), which includes lithium ion battery (LIB) and lithium ion polymer battery (LIP). As the most demanded battery, Li-ion covers 80% of the market share, while that of NI-MH battery only covers 20%. Moreover, the new generation of LIP is becoming more and more popular for its advantages and with a market share of 12% ~14%.

After several years' development, the global Li-ion battery industry has been monopolized evenly by China, Japan and South Korea. This pattern will last for quite a long time since each of the three countries has its own characteristics and advantages. In recent years, China has made great achievements in Li-ion battery industrialization. It has formed a complete industry chain from upstream products, raw material manufacturing, equip-



ment manufacturing, battery processing, export trade and downstream products. According to Research In China, the number of Li-ion battery manufacturers has exceeded 100 in China, among which Shenzhen BYD, BAK and Tianjin Lishen have become the major battery manufacturers worldwide, with an annual output over 600 million units. As a large consumption country of Li-ion battery, as well as abundant labor force and raw materials, China has become the final destination for multinational Li-ion battery manufacturers, such as Sony, Panasonic, and Sanyo, etc. Consequently, China has developed to be an important global Li-ion battery production base.

By 2006, color display phone has dominated the market. Along with frequent appearance of camera phone and multimedia phone, functions of photo shooting, receiving and sending multimedia messages, and downloading high-capacity games are used more and more often. However, in facing with more powerful 3G mobile phones, battery capacity is obviously insufficient. Mobile phone battery tends to be lighter, thinner and higher capacity. Various new battery types such as fuel cell, Zinc-air and solar cell are under the R & D process.

Paragraph 10

TD-SCDMA 的发展报告 D-SCDMA Development Report

TD-SCDMA (Time Division Synchronous Code Division Multiple Access) is China's 3G standard.

TD-SCDMA standard, originally co-developed by CATT of MII and Siemens, combines the SCDMA technology and the TD-CDMA technology.

The document of TD-SCDMA standard was finally amended and completed by CWTS, approved by former Ministry of Posts and Telecommunications of China, and submitted to ITU and relative international standard organizations in June 1998. And TD-SCDMA was approved to be one of the mainstream 3G standards on ITU conference held in Helsinki in Nov 1999.

According to MII, in 2006, in the Chinese 3G market structure, WCDMA accounts for about 65%, CDMA2000 1X accounts for about 20%, and TD-SCDMA accounts for about 15%. After realizing the importance of 3G

technology to fill in the technological gap between domestic and advanced mobile phone vendors worldwide, China has actively developed its own 3G technologies.

As for the investment scale of 3G/TD-SCDMA, Research In China thinks that:

Research In China calls this phenomenon the “3G scissors gap”

According to Research in China, if 3G licenses are released in 2006, the amount of 3G subscribers will reach 6.2 million in the first year; and three years later, i. e. , by 2009, the amount of 3G subscribers will reach 128 million.

Calculating according to the 3G user scale, Research In China predicts that the amount of TD-SCDMA subscribers in 2006 will be 20 000; 2 million by 2007; 11 million by 2008; 30.5 million by 2009; and 54 million by 2010.

Paragraph 11

HSDPA 的发展报告 HSDPA Development Report

HSDPA is the upgrade from WCDMA, with a higher data transmission rate, which favors the development of mobile broadband data services. HSDPA is also able to increase system capacity, and to provide better services to high-rate users on the same wireless carrier frequency.

HSDPA not only supports High Speed Asymmetrical Data Service, but also helps operators minimize the investment cost while significantly increasing network capacity. It provides a smooth migration path for higher UMTS data transmission rate and higher capacity, just as EDGE to GSM network.

The development of HSDPA can be divided into three stages, i. e. basic HSDPA, enhanced HSDPA, and future HSDPA, the future HSDPA not being defined yet and still in the research process under 3GPP. Moreover, the equipments for the second stage need to be perfected and improved.

The cost of HSDPA network construction is mainly due to software/hardware upgrade of Node B and RNC. Therefore, the deployment of HSDPA has better price-performance ratio.

Most of the overseas operators have obtained 3G licenses, and all net-

works have been or will be built soon. However, the current status of 3G operation is not as good as expected, and most operators are not making any profits. Therefore, the adoption of HSDPA is a good solution to the condition mentioned above.

At present, China has delayed the timetable of issuing 3G licenses for several times. This has put operators at a disadvantage in the short term, and also severely depressed the fixed-line operators who were eager to obtain the license. However, the advantage is that operators can now choose the 3G network they will deploy. The cost of HSDPA only accounts for one fifteenth of that of GPRS and one fifth of that of WCDMA.

Paragraph 12

C 中国智能手机市场报告 **China's Smartphone Market Report**

The smartphone refers to the multi-functional phone with an open operating system and a CPU, and that has extendable hardware and software functions.

The popular operating systems for smartphones are Symbian, Windows, Linux, etc. The third party developers can develop various applications according to the API provided by the operating systems; therefore, theoretically the applications of smartphones can be extended unlimitedly.

Smartphone, as an important product for the manufacturers to reveal their technology strengths and increase their profit margin, has gained wide attention in the mobile phone market.

In 2005, the sales of smartphones in China were about 520 000 units. The smartphone market will maintain its strong growing momentum in 2006; the annual growth rate will be as high as 75%.

Due to the large demand, high profits, and sound market expectations for smartphones, most mobile phone manufacturers now focus on R & D for smartphones.

Though the market shares of smartphone were not high during 2002—2005, considering the forthcoming 3G era and the increase of mobile phone sales in China, enhancing the R&D for smartphones and increasing its market share are essential for the manufacturers.

WCDMA 的发展报告 CDMA Development Report

Originated from the early 3rd generation wireless research activities in Europe and Japan, WCDMA is an open wireless access technology, which provides Internet access services and various multimedia operations such as music, TV and video entertainment. For service providers, WCDMA means increased network capacity, enhanced efficiency and more sales revenues, which is the natural evolvement of GSM operation.

WCDMA is the major incentive to the commercialized 3G services. Elaborately, in 2005, more than forty commercial WCDMA networks were released worldwide; accounting for about 80% or more of all 2005 released 3G networks. By December 2005, there had been 100 WCDMA networks released in 42 countries all over the world, which illustrates over two-thirds of WCDMA license holders have already released their own 3G business operations. Furthermore, it also reflects the maturity of this technology and the rapid development of the global market.



中国电信业发展 20 年跃居世界首位

曾制约社会、经济发展“瓶颈”的中国电信业,经过 20 多年的超常规发展,用户规模已跃居世界首位。

改革开放之初,中国通信产业十分落后。1978 年,人口总数超过 9 亿的中国,只有电话交换机 406 万门,其中自动交换机 116 万门,尚不及 400 万人口的香港地区;电话普及率平均每百人不到半部,低于当时非洲国家的水平。发展严重滞后的通信业与刚刚实施改革开放的中国对经济发展的迫切要求形成了巨大反差,成为制约社会、经济发展的“瓶颈”因素。

从 1985 年起,中国邮电通信的发展速度开始超过国民经济的发展速度。1998 年之后,伴随着市场经济体制的逐步确立,中国电信业成功地打破垄断、开放市场、引入市场竞争机制,带来了电信业空前的市场繁荣和新一轮的高速发展。



据介绍,从2000年开始,中国每年的电话用户新增数都在1亿左右,电信业务总量保持了30%左右的增长幅度。截至2004年底,均已实现电话交换程控化、传输数字化的中国电信业,局用交换机容量达到42102万门,移动交换机容量达到39747万户。电信业务收入在全国GDP中所占的比重,已从1986年的0.3%提高到了3.8%。

2006年,电话用户总数达到7.69亿户,其中固定电话用户3.59亿户,移动电话用户4.1亿户。针对不同的用户群体,电信运营商推出了各种新产品。如中国电信的“号码百事通”和“商务领航”,都较好地满足了公众和企业的信息通信需求。



Vocabulary 妙词连珠

distress call 遇险电话	switch key 电话键
overseas call 越洋通话	telescribe 电话录音机
busy line 占线	service meter 通话计时器
through dialling 直通拨号	terminal set 终端机
residence telephone call 住宅电话	dial toll circuit 长途拨号电路
installation charge 装机费	earth line 地下电缆线路
automatic call 自动呼叫	inside connection 内线
paid call 自费通话	hot line 热线
dial 拨号盘	local line 市内线路
telephone set; telephone 电话机	outside connection 外线
telephone switch 电话机开关	rural line 乡村电话线路

U 原材料 Unit 8 Material

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. The coating markets in developed countries are saturated and are now developing towards maturity after a rapid development.
发达国家的涂料市场已经饱和,在快速发展之后向更加成熟发展。
2. It is estimated that some 70% increase will appear in Asia coating markets in the next 5—10 years while China is going to be the most active market with the fastest development.
据估计,5—10年后,大概亚洲涂料市场会出现大约70%的增长,中国将是最活跃的市场,发展将更迅速。
3. The national economy decides the coating market development.
国民经济的发展决定了涂料市场的发展。
4. In China, coating mainly categorized as architectural coating and paint.
在中国,涂料业包括建筑涂料及绘画涂料。
5. The national output of flat glass was 365.7 million weight cases in 2006, increasing by 17.12% compared to 2005.
全国的平面玻璃在2006年产量为36570万,比2005年增长17.12%。
6. The gross profit achieved RMB 879 million in 2006, decreased by 68.22% than 2005.
2006年毛收入为87900万人民币,比2005年增加68.22%。
7. In 2006, China's glass industry was still confronted with many contradictions and pressures such as unbalance of supply and demand, restriction of resource environment and high price of raw

2006 年中国的玻璃生产也面临了很多矛盾和压力,例如:供求不平衡,原料来源受限制及成本的提高。

8. Influenced by the history and social background, China has four major advantages to develop ferric oxide industry: skilled and low-cost labor force, rich raw materials, professional technical personnel and large market at home and abroad.

由于历史和社会背景的原因,中国冶铁业有四大优势:低成本劳动力成本,丰富的矿产资源,专业的技术部门以及国内外广阔的市场。

9. In 2005, the global cement output was 2.27 billion ton, and it is forecasted that the global cement sale will attain 22.3 billion ton by 2010.

2005 年全球水泥产量为 22.7 亿吨,到 2010 年将达到 223 亿吨。

10. Chinese steel industry developed rapidly thanks to the high market demand for steel.

中国钢铁业的发展得益于市场的高需求。



Wonderful Paragraph

精彩片段

Paragraph 1

C 中国涂料业 China's Coating Industry

The coating markets in developed countries are saturated and are now developing towards maturity after a rapid development. The developing countries and regions, however, have turned to be the new increase point of global coating industry considering the huge market potentials. It is estimated that some 70% increase will appear in Asia coating markets in the next 5—10 years while China is going to be the most active market with the fastest development.

The national economy decides the coating market development. China's economy will witness a continually steady growth in the future. As

for the downstream industries, the rapid development of automotive and real estate industry is about to bring great business opportunities for coating manufacturers and dealers. Furthermore, huge potential demand may happen on green and energy-saving coatings. According to the statistics of Ministry of Construction, China has 40 billion square meters of existing buildings, and of these, nearly one-third (about more than 13 billion square meters) needs an energy-saving reconstruction. It will cost about RMB 2.6 trillion calculated by RMB 200 per square meter, which means huge business opportunities in green and energy-saving coating market.

With the data sourced from National Bureau of Statistics, China Customs, Bureau of Statistics of Light Industry, China National Coatings Industry Association and coating manufacturers, the report makes an in-depth analysis on the economic feature, competition and future development of China's coating industry. It is a good reference for coating manufacturers, retail firms and investment institutes to understand the industry and make the right decision.

Paragraph 2

F 在中国的外资企业 **Foreign-funded Companies in China**

The global coating manufacturers are constantly developing towards collectiveness, large-scale and specialization in order to win the fierce competition while such objectives can be achieved by merger, reorganization as well as integration. Coating industry featured as low-technical entry, there are now about 10 000 coating companies in China, and the industry lacks well-known brands, price are in disorder, industrial criterion needs to be worked out and product quality is uneven, therefore, it is inevitable for China's coating industry to carry out merger & reorganization and integration.

Foreign-funded companies have taken action towards acquisition due to a well expect for China's coating market. Worldwide giant Akzo Nobel, Netherlands acquired Guangzhou Toide Coating Corporation in Oct 2005.



Shunde Huarun Paints Co., Ltd was purchased by the Valspar Corporation, the forth largest coating corporation in the USA, which drew much attention of the industry. Apart from foreign coating giants, the domestic firms also began the acquisition. Maydos acquired Yangzhou Jinling, Beijing Sanqi and Zhejiang Rongtai and also hold a share of Guangzhou Supe, and it is also the shareholder of Shenzhen Motian and Foshan Eastman.

Paragraph 3

C中国玻璃业报告 China's Glass Industry Report

Along with the ascending of industrial profit since 2003, glass industry became more attractive, surging up a new-round of investment from 2003 to 2006. Since the construction cycle of glass production line is around one year, newly-added production capacity would emerge between 2004 and 2006. This expansion of production capacity is mainly in South China and East China; most of production lines in the east China were constructed and start operations in 2004 while the release of production capacity in South China mainly happened in 2005. Guangdong is the province gathered the most newly-added production capacity in South China.

The concentration degree of flat glass production was further improved in 2005. There were only 4 flat glass manufacturers with annual output over 5 million weight cases in 2000 while the number reached 24 in 2005 with output accounting for 52.21% of the total. The annual output of 11 enterprises (groups) including Harun achieved more than ten millions weight cases, accounting for 49.05% of the total.

The national output of flat glass was 365.7 million weight cases in 2005, increasing by 17.12% compared to 2004. The sales revenue of whole industry reached RMB 30.2 billion with a year-on-year increase of 12.64%, but the cost rose by 28.23%, far higher than the income growth. The gross profit achieved RMB 879 million, decreased by 68.22% than 2004.

C 2005 年中国铁氧化物市场报告 China's Ferric Oxide Market Report 2005

In 2005, the production capacity of ferric oxide in China exceeded 700 kiloton, the total output to 622.7 kiloton and export volume to 329.5 kiloton. Ferric oxide products are mainly exported to North America, Europe and Southeast Asian.

The scale expansion of China's ferric oxide industry has not only drew wide attention from relevant industries such as steel industry, smelting industry, titanium industry and sulfuric acid industry, but also attracted overseas manufacturers and sales companies. Some foreign ferric oxide manufacturers and sellers are optimistic of Chinese market, like Bayer, Rockwood and Elementis. They have already established sole proprietorship enterprises or joint ventures in coastal area, like Shanghai, Fuyang (in Zhejiang), Changshu & Taicang (in Jiangsu), and Shenzhen. Nowadays, Jiangsu, Zhejiang and Shanghai and Guangdong become production bases for foreign ferric oxide manufacturers. Most of these foreign manufacturers mainly purchase primary products of ferric oxide, and then process them, whose annual production capacity exceeds 120 000 ton.

Ferric oxide products are mainly applied in the field of paint, also applied in magnetism materials. Ferric oxide is widely applied in paint industry, among inorganic color paints, the output and demand of ferric oxide is the largest. It is applied in various precast concrete units in construction industry and used as paints or colorants for construction products such as color floor tile, metope decoration, terrazzo floor and color tile. In addition, it is also applied in the pigmentation of various paints and protective substances (including water interior & exterior paint, powder paint) and oil paint (including various priming paints and finish paint). Ferric oxide paint can be also applied in rubber, plastic, ceramics, cosmetic, medical, paper and leather industry.

Paragraph 5

C2006 年中国铁氧化物市场报告 **China's Ferric Oxide Market Report 2006**

In 2006, the supply of China's ferric oxide was balanced and ample, not excluding shortage or overstock in some areas or within certain manufacturers at a particular period.

Influenced by the history and social background, China has four major advantages to develop ferric oxide industry: skilled and low-cost labor force, rich raw materials, professional technical personnel and large market at home and abroad.

Ferric oxide industry belongs to a labor-intensive industry with resource and energy consumption. Along with the requirements of China environmental protection policies and development trend, higher requirements are put forward to protect the environment during ferric oxide production. Chinese government attaches great importance to production and management of ferric oxide industry, therefore a reasonable, moderate and feasible control on total demand of ferric oxide has been worked out. China has already released relevant policies to restrict these manufactures in immature production conditions with annual output below 5 000 ton, which not only waste resource but pollute environment, so as to protect exporting manufactures, to ensure reasonably utilize resource and to reduce pollution influences on social environment.

Paragraph 6

A中国铁氧化物的发展分析 **Analyzing China's Ferric Oxide Development**

It should also be noted that problems co-exist with the rapid development of China's ferric oxide industry. On one hand, low threshold to ferric oxide industry caused mass production and long-term repeated construction, regardless of market demand; on the other hand, the primary products of China's ferric oxide accounts for a big market share, which means

the quality of ferric oxide products is still at middle-low level in international market; moreover, the value added to products is low. Restricted by the requirements of energy, resources and environment, the production of ferric oxide is under higher pressure. Export is also hindered by Euramerican economic fluctuation and trade bulwark.

In general, China's ferric oxide industry has a good prospect. The construction of rural-urban infrastructure will stimulate the demand of ferric oxide as construction paint. Particularly, the start-up of Beijing 2008 Olympics project and Shanghai 2010 World Expo project will drive the development of ferric oxide industry. What's more, the demand of China's ferric oxide products in oversea market is also large. As long as China's ferric oxide manufacturers seize this opportunity, speed up saving energy and reducing energy consumption, develop new products and improve the value added to products, more market shares can be occupied.

Paragraph 7

C2005 年中国水泥市场报告 **China's Cement Market Report 2005**

The sustainable development strategy for China's cement industry is part of the social sustainable development strategy. China is one of the main markets for the production and consumption of cement in the world. In 2005, China had a cement output of 1.064 billion ton, up 9.69% than 2004. In 2006, the Chinese cement production still stay within its contraction period and is most likely to grow slower than GDP, but if the investment in fixed asset can keep a steady growth, the demand for cement is still able to reach 1.12 ~ 1.14 billion ton. The World Bank forecasts that the growth rate of the global economy in 2006 will be higher than 2005, and the international trade will greatly increase. The International Monetary Fund forecasts that the growth rate in 2006 will be the same as 2005, which still will be 4.3% and the trade growth rate will reduce to 6.5% from 9%. China's GDP growth rate was 9.9% in 2005. Some Chinese experts forecast that the GDP will rise by 8.7% ~ 9.2% in 2006. The development of the global



and Chinese economy will stimulate the demand for cement, the growth will maintain between 7% and 8%, and the output will be around 1.15 billion ton in 2006.

In 2005, the global cement output was 2.27 billion ton, and it is forecasted that the global cement sale will attain 2.23 billion ton by 2010. The U. S. will continue to play the role of bellwether till 2010. It is forecasted that the cement import will achieve 30 million ton in 2010 and in 5 ~ 6 years, the global cement industry will experience a worldwide merger and reorganization, by 2010 there will be 75% of the production capacity involving in the merger tide, oversize multinational groups will be established. It is an opportunity and a challenge at the same time for the Chinese cement and concrete corporative groups.

We research on the Chinese cement industry's supply and demand, development, competitive status, import and export, and its prospect etc., especially the production and sale of various cement products. It also provided an analysis on the impacts that China's cement industry will face in the WTO era, and some good suggestions. This report was given on the basis of large quantity of information published by the National Bureau of Statistics, the State Bureau of Building Material, the National Development and Reform Commission, China Cement Association, the National Bulk Cement Office, various newspapers and magazines of Chinese and overseas, some cement research institutes in addition of the investigations about cement relevant enterprises made by Syntech Information Co., Ltd. This report provides access to great data about the status quo and development trend of the cement industry and offers a guide for the cement and cement relevant enterprise to make right strategies.

Paragraph 8

C中国钢铁业报告 **China's Iron & Steel Industry Report**

In 2004, China produced 272.79 million tons of steel and 251.85 million tons of pig iron with rises of 22.7% and 24.2% respectively last year, and



produced 297.23 million tons of rolled steel (recycled steel included), with an increase of 23.29%. According to the calculation, the growth rate of apparent steel consumption dropped from 25.8% in 2003 to 10.71% in 2004. After investigation, we found that the decrease of the steel storage has decreased the rate of actual consumption to around 13%, a 12.8% decrease year-on-year.

With the importation decreasing and the exportation increasing for steel and steel billets, the net volume of imported steel decreased from 36.55 million tons in 2003 to approximately 13.83 million tons in 2004, a cut by 22.72 million tons, or 62.16%, that is, 45% of the steel production increased in 2004 is for importation and exportation. This change is a significant transition: on one hand it shows that in recent years, the development of steel industry is, in general, sound, active and effective, and on the other hand it also reminds us that the room for further expanding steel production capacity becomes smaller than ever.

Chinese steel industry developed rapidly thanks to the high market demand for steel. It kept a good balance between production and sales and made substantial economic returns in the first quarter of 2005, in which China achieved the expected favorable balance for the first time. In March 2005, the international negotiation on iron ore and its increasing price became the focus of the world. There are many factors, such as national macro-control of the steel industry, the rising price of iron freight and policies of export tax refund, all of which will have a great influence on the national steel industry. So, what can we expect of the Chinese steel industry development in the future?

As far as Chinese steel industry is concerned, the year of 2005 is very crucial for its historical transition, because in this year, the output of Chinese steel production will reach 300 million tons or even more, which will be a great leap in China's history, and which also shows that from now on, we should carefully transfer our attention from the growth in quantity to the improvement of quality, to the optimization of structure and to a much more comprehensive, coordinative, and sustainable development.

After in-depth surveys of steel manufacturers, according to years of experienced research on steel industry, using quantitative and qualitative analysis, relating the changes concerning supply and demand, we made this report, which gives an overall summary of the development of Chinese steel industry. Through accurate data and comprehensive descriptions, we present you detailed analyses on issues facing Chinese steel industry in 2006, such as market circumstances, business operations, market for steel products and sustainable development. Then, with the combination of quantitative and qualitative analyses, we predicted the development of Chinese steel industry and provided reliable analyses, for companies to build their development strategy and to seize opportunities.

Paragraph 9

C中国冶金业 China's Metallurgy Industry

In 2006, the government's macro control and adjustment of industry policy produced impact on some metallurgy enterprises in China's metallurgy industry. However, the industry remained prosperous as a whole, with steady growth in output and sales revenue. The micro-economic environment and investment environment in the industry still presented a rosy picture. Listed steel companies and non-ferrous metal companies achieved encouraging performance. Therefore, the industry is worth investing. Due to low industry concentration, competition is very intense in the industry. Thus, profitability is vital to an enterprise's development. Irrational industry structure is a serious problem in this sector. The excessive production capacity of some low-end products coexists with the insufficient production capacity of products with high added value. The shift from production capacity expansion to the adjustment of industrial structure is the development direction in the future.

C 中国建筑材料业报告 China's Building Materials Industry Report

In 2006, the government's macro control, and the adjustment of industry policy produced impact on some enterprises in China's building materials industry. However, the industry still maintained stable growth on the whole, with steady growth in the output and sales revenue. The micro-economic environment and investment environment of the industry looks rosy. Due to low industry concentration, competition is very intense in the industry. The industry structure is not really rational. The excessive production capacity of low-end products coexists with the insufficient production capacity of products with high added value.

After probing into main factors affecting the development of China's building materials market in the next few years, the report conducts qualitative and quantitative forecast of the development trend of the industry, and presents thorough analysis of the industry's investment value. Finally, it provides development strategy and recommendations for the government, enterprises and investors.

Cultural Links 文化链接

五金原材料涨价凸显“镁”景

近年来多数金属原材料的价格都有不同程度的上涨。随着全球工业经济的增长,金属原材料需求不断扩大,其价格仍在不断被拉高,对于我国这样一个工业迅速发展的国家,金属原材料供给相对不足,其价格已经飙升到了令企业难以承受的程度。

到目前为止,原材料价格虽然已经趋于平稳,较前期出现回落,但是就今后较长的一段时间来看,原材料价格上涨将是一个长期趋势。大幅度降价在一段时间内将是不可能的,这将成为今后五金企业面临的一个重大难题。原材料价格的飞涨给五金企业造成了巨大压力,国内不少中小型五金



制品企业纷纷转产,部分大企业也不得不采取涨价、技术创新、寻找替代品等措施应对。

今年以来,以金属为原材料的五金产品价格已经出现了数次调整,小五金件的涨幅大约在 10% ~ 30% 左右。不少消费者对产品的涨价十分不情愿,但面对整个市场的变化,也不得不掏腰包共同承担原材料涨价带来的压力。除去五金配件之外,锅碗瓢盆等五金厨房用具的价格也有了小幅度的调整,批发市场上的销售商纷纷抱怨这些产品都或多或少地抬高了出厂价格,他们面对消费者也不得不提价。

为渡过此难关,目前各企业都期待在不改变产品质量的前提下寻找合适的替代材料,提高产品技术含量和附加值。但寻找材料需要一个过程,并要通过质量、使用寿命等方面的试验。

目前,不少企业开始运用新技术开发镁、陶瓷等材料代替铜及其他一些高价原材料。作为 21 世纪的新型绿色材料,越来越多的人已经认识到金属镁及镁合金的优点,业内人士不仅看好其在汽车行业的应用,也看好其在民用领域的广泛应用。随着各种新技术、新工艺的不断涌现,相信镁在包括五金行业等领域的应用将不断扩大。



Vocabulary

妙词连珠

high-strength cement 高强水泥

calcareous cement 灰质水泥

concrete 混凝土

concrete plate 混凝土板

concrete pipe 混凝土管

concrete block 混凝土砖块

quick-hardened cement 快硬水泥

slag plaster 炉渣灰泥

cinder concrete 煤渣混凝土

refractory cement 耐火水泥

acid-resistant cement 耐酸水泥

clay mortar 泥浆

expansive cement 膨胀水泥

bulk cement 散装水泥

gypsum 生石膏

quicklime 生石灰

red tile 红瓦

red brick 红砖

grey brick 灰砖

ridge tile 脊瓦

breeze brick 焦渣砖

floor tile 阶砖

hollow brick 空心砖

hard-burned brick 炼制砖

glazed tile 琉璃瓦	wallpanel 壁板
refractory brick 耐火砖	seasoned wood 干燥木材
under ridge tile 平脊瓦	plywood 胶合板
quarry tile 铺地砖	wood 木料
linoleum floor tile 漆布地砖	marquetry wood 嵌镶木
blue brick 青砖	green wood 湿材
light-weight brick 轻质砖	deal 松杉板材
over tile 上瓦	fibreboard 纤维板
asbestos shingle 石棉瓦	direct printed plywood 印花合板
sawn timber 板材	veneer wood 装饰木



U 网络经济 Unit 9 Cyber Economy



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. The development of China's online game industry also promotes the development of related industries.
中国网络游戏的发展也带动了相关产业的发展。
2. China's online game industry has already been at a stable and mature development stage.
中国的网络游戏发展已进入一个稳定成熟的时期。
3. Meanwhile, online game companies have already established closely cooperative relationships with leading telecom sectors and online game manufacturers.
同时,网络游戏商与首要电信商及游戏制造厂建立了紧密的合作关系。
4. Worldwide rapid development of e-business booms up electronic payment and online transfer in which the online banking plays an important role.
电子商务的全球迅速发展带动了电子支付手段及网上转账的发展,网上银行是其中重要一部分。
5. Laws and regulations of China's online banking are being improved continuously.
关于网络银行的法律和法规正在不断完善中。
6. 16 Chinese major commercial banks were involved.
16家中国主要的商业银行加入其中。
7. With its fast development, online/mobile payment has become the preferred payment means for a great number of online consumers.
随着它的快速发展,网上/移动支付,可以被很多网上消费者所使用。

8. In China, with the development of the Internet, the recruitment methods are continuously changing.

在中国,随着网络的发展,网上招聘手段得到了不断的变化。

9. Online advertisement refers to the commercial advertisement, using pictures, text or multi media via Internet.

网络广告是指通过网络用图片、文字等多媒体方式而做的商业广告。



Wonderful Paragraph

精彩片段

Paragraph 1

C 中国网络游戏 China's Online Game Industry

In 2005, China's online game market competition was fierce in all categories, and more than 20 online game products released every month. By the end of 2005, more than 200 online game products were available on the market, of which less than 10 percent of products were profitable. Nevertheless, the growth of overall market shares of online game is still fast with generous profits. The actual sales revenue of China's online game market reached RMB 3.77 billion in 2005, up by 52.6 percent over the year of 2004.

The development of China's online game industry also promotes the development of related industries. The sales revenues of telecom operation generated by online game totaled RMB 17.34 billion in 2005, as high as 4.6 times of the actual revenue of online game. Moreover, the sales revenue of IT industry generated by online game also reached RMB 7.16 billion, 1.9 times of that of online game.

China's online game industry has already been at a stable and mature development stage. On the whole, the development of online game industry at this stage presents characteristics of unity and harmony, and it gradu-



ally forms an integrated industry chain. Along with the development of online game industry, business of channel vendors, point-card sellers, Internet services (Internet cafe) and media are developed rapidly. And online game operators who occupy the most key position on the whole industry chain are becoming more and more mature and rational. Meanwhile, online game companies have already established closely cooperative relationships with leading telecom sectors and online game manufacturers.

From the year of 2006 to 2007, a series of changes have taken place in China's online game industry. Traditional profit model (point-card charges) has already been stricken by new models (free playtime and game value-added charges). Meanwhile, casual online games are becoming popular gradually.

This report analyzes China's online game upstream and downstream industry chain, and China's government policies about online game. Data quoted in this report involves not only market scale of online game and quantity of online game subscribers, but also full details about consumer investigation. At the same time, it puts forward a view of risks and problems existed, and the investment opportunities, also provides strategic suggestions on development of China's online game industry.

Paragraph 2

C中国网上银行 China's Online Banking

Worldwide rapid development of e-business booms up electronic payment and online transfer in which the online banking plays an important role. Electronic money, e-money for short, which was brought together with online banking, provides strong support for electronic payment with its specific online payment functions. As final executant of electronic payment and balancing, online banks act as a bridge between buyers and sellers, through which the most pivotal factor and highest level in e-business e-payment service is provided.

Three periods exist in online banking development: the first is comput-

er-aided banking management from 1950s to the late 1980s; the second is electronic banking or informationized financial from late 1980s to middle of 1990s; the third is online banking from late 1990s until now.

Till the end of 2005, number of China's netizen has exceeded 100 million and China's annual turnover of e-business was more than 0.68 trillion. Huge number of netizen is a guarantee for the development of China's online banking while at the same time the large scale of e-business and online banking also mutually promote development of each other.

Laws and regulations of China's online banking are being improved continuously.

Since 1990s, with the worldwide rise of electronic bank, China's electronic bank businesses of commercial bank developed rapidly. In order to regulate commercial banks to develop business through the Internet, PBC issued Temporary Methods of Online banking Business Management in June 2001.

Bill of Electronic Signature has been in enforcement since Apr 1, 2005. Good online credit mechanism and fruitful net transaction channels are thus established, through which the history lack of law guarantee is ended and the development of e-business and online banking is promoted.

In order to control risk of electronic bank business, CBRC issued Electronic Bank Business Management Methods and Electronic Bank security Assessment Direction in late 2005 and early 2006. Both of the two regulations began to affect since Mar 1, 2006.

In early 2006, Hexun introduced an activity of China online banking evaluation. 16 Chinese major commercial banks were involved. Through investigating both domestic and overseas individual online banking relative functions comprehensive evaluations with an excluded index system (consisted of more than 30 indicators and more than 200 items) from three aspects public confidence indicator, platform performance indicator and business performance indicator.



Paragraph 3

C中国网上支付和移动支付 China's Online & Mobile Payment Market

Along with the fast progress of Internet and mobile network in recent years, various kinds of e-commerce emerged, bringing more convenience and alternatives to people's life. Online payment and mobile payment, as incentive means to further development of e-commerce, will become the main payment means of e-commerce by and by.

Currently, there are five accesses to mobile payment: STK, IVR (Interactive Voice Response), USSD, WAP and WWW. IVR, STK and WWW are more frequently adopted. Mobile payment business mode has four categories: mobile paying service, mobile wallet service, mobile banking service and mobile credit platform. The former three have been practically applied. According to the roles acted, mobile payment industrial chain can be divided into three categories: mobile operators-based industrial chain, bank-based industrial chain and the one led by mobile payment operators. The cooperation of mobile operators and banks, with mobile payment platform operated by professional companies, can avoid inherent obstacles in information security, product development and resource sharing, etc. when third-party payment platform providers join in. Also it can realize the sharing and management of financial information service and banks' intermediate businesses; and satisfy the great demand of users for mobile payment service and information security. Thereby, it is the most suitable business mode for mobile payment development in China.

Paragraph 4

T发展的结果 The Results of the Development

With its fast development, online/mobile payment has become the preferred payment means for a great number of online consumers. Even so, it doesn't hamper the rising of new online shopping transaction pattern.

In July, 2006, China Union Pay and dangdang. com cooperated to open the new e-commerce payment service “online shopping; offline swipe card payment” that is based on smart swipe card telephone. Noticeably, the payment via this transaction system is affiliated with no commission charge. Then August, 2006, China Union Pay opened 20 thousand swipe card telephones in Beijing, Shanghai and Shenzhen cities, serving more than 400 thousand users. As is said by Liang Jian-the general manager of China Union Pay’s holding company Shanghai Card Information Service Co. , Ltd. , 100 thousand swipe card telephones will have been opened in Beijing, Shanghai, Guangzhou and Shenzhen cities by the end of 2006, spreading the services over to three million online users. Yet, this new payment pattern stirred the dissatisfaction of commercial banks and third-party operators because of their declining revenues.

The market access qualifications being studied by the People’s Bank of China and China Banking Regulatory Commission and the involvement of China Union Pay in the market of online payment will inevitably result in the reshuffle of China’s online payment market. To survive in the market of online payment, the third-party payment institutions have to make greater effort to win in the fierce competition.

Paragraph 5

C 中国网络经济发展报告 China Cyber-economy Development Report

In 2005, China’s E-commerce market scale reached 680 billion RMB. The cyber-economy mentioned in this report means network service companies’ economic activities fully depending on the Internet platform. Since 2006, led by Web 2.0, cyber-economy opportunities will emerge in an endless stream and those opportunities supply a new development space for investors and pioneers.

According to the research of Research in China (RIC) on hundreds of network companies in 2005, cyber-economy has become a successful (large income scale) business pattern. It mainly concentrates in nine



fields: online advertisement, online tourism, online recruitment, online shopping, search engine, automobile websites, real estate websites, on-line payment, online music and online video.

According to RIC, China's cyber-economy scale exceeded 20 billion RMB in 2005. This report summarizes the current situation and competition pattern of China's cyber-economy in general and studies the successful business patterns of major network companies. In addition, the report analyses the market opportunities of cyber-economy and companies worth investing in.

Comprehensive portals and industrial websites have an integration function of "gathering the population". However, with the popularization of the Internet in the daily life, more focused websites targeting professional groups are needed to meet the individual's demand for diversity and personality.

Web 2.0 is the new Web model, represented by webs such as Flickr, Craigslist, Linkedin, Tribes, Ryze, Friendster, and by social concepts such as Blogs, TAG, SNS, RSS, Wiki. It was realized by the new theories of Six Degrees of Separation, xml, ajax and new techs. Many emerging webs are become fashionable and some of them have attracted large amounts of investments. This report analyses business patterns and development prospects of those emerging webs.

Paragraph 6

C中国网上招聘市场报告 **China's Online Recruitment Market Report**

In China, with the development of the Internet, the recruitment methods are continuously changing. The online recruitment characteristics: no region and time limitation, wider range, high efficiency, fast, time-saving, low cost and others, make it become more and more popular to enterprises and applicants. With the market share continuously expanding, it is making steps into the mainstream recruitment ways. Currently, the online recruitment is enjoying a fast-growing period.

In 2004, online recruitment occupied 13.2% of the whole recruitment market, far lower than newspaper recruitment and on-spot job fair. In 2005, the online recruitment market grew sharply and shared 20% of the whole recruitment market. Its market share is estimated to be 28.2% and its market scale is estimated to be 1.42 billion Yuan in 2006 respectively. There's still a large development space for China's online recruitment compared with the quotient of 78% in America.

Since 2003, more and more Chinese enterprises began to enjoy the online recruitment service. Especially in 2004, 90% of the World top 500 enterprises in China enjoyed the online recruitment. Moreover, more than half of the high tech enterprises enjoyed the online recruitment service in 2005. The online recruitment gains more and more recognition thanks to its characteristics such as wide range, abundant information, great choices, high quality of applicants and low cost.

Apart from the enterprises, the online recruitment also receives more and more applicants' preference. Many of them are well educated young people and surfing the Internet frequently. In 2005, the number of China's netizens reached 111 million, showing a great potential for online recruitment development.

Online recruitment develops imbalanced in different regions: it is developing well in southern China, northern China, and eastern China; it has a great development potential in middle China; it is on the elementary step in the northeastern China and southwestern China while it develops relatively slow in the northwestern China.

The development of online recruitment for different industries also has different prospects. IT industry and manufacturing industry are the two largest industrial clients for online recruitment. The local online recruitment market and industrial online recruitment market are deserving more attention from the investors.



C中国网络广告的发展 China's Online Advertising Development

Online advertisement refers to the commercial advertisement, using pictures, text or multi media via Internet.

The initial form of online advertisement was the banner, similar to the traditional printed advertisements. Currently, various online advertisement forms are created and attracting more and more clients.

The Online advertisement features are: wide spread range, strong interactivity, strong pertinence, countable audience amount, real time, flexibility, low cost etc. Online advertisements have dual attributes of compulsion and user dominance.

The industry chain of online advertisement comprises advertiser, agent, online media, online advertisement technology suppliers and operators of online advertisement platforms.

Industrial Chain of Online Advertisement

The Relevant technologies of online advertisement mainly include advertisement production technology and advertisement supervision technology.

As a kind of new advertisement mode, online advertisement, which is growing along with the development and popularization of Internet, differs from traditional advertisement in the view of the charging mode, which includes CPA, CPP, CPM, CPC, LEAD, monthly payment and so on.

Expenditure of Online Advertisement in America

Although America is the source region of online advertisement, the online advertisement still takes small proportion in the advertisement market. In 2004, the expenditure of online advertisement only took 3.7% in the total advertisement expenditure, which was a little higher than 3% in 2003.

Overseas Online Advertisement Markets

Online advertisement in Japan is greatly affected by traditional marketing method, representing an integration of online advertisement, TV adver-



tisement and broadcasting advertisement.

From 1995 to 2003, online advertisement market in Korea maintained a stable growth rate.

In Europe, online advertisement in Britain has the highest growth rate. Search engine advertisement is the main form of online advertisement in Europe. The enterprises of IT and communication industries are the main advertisers.

Development status of online advertisement industry in China

In 2003, SARS brought a big development opportunity to online advertisement industry. In 2003, China's online advertisement market scale reached RMB ¥1.08 billion, increasing by over 100% compared to RMB ¥490 million in 2002. In 2004, online advertisement market in China (except search engine) has increased from RMB ¥1.08 billion to RMB ¥1.9 billion with a growth rate of 75.9%, indicating that whole online advertisement market maintains a high-speed growth trend.

Considering the market segmentation of online advertisement, the advertisement of online services, IT products and real estate are taking the major market shares. In 2005, the proportion of online service advertisement kept stable, floating around RMB ¥110 million. Advertisement of IT products showed a fluctuant increase.

In 2006, Web portals are still the main medium for online advertisement. Sina and Sohu together occupied 55% shares of the total online advertisement market.

In 2005, online advertisement supervision has become a hotspot for competition. ChinaRun Technologies Inc, Chinanet and www.adijc.com etc all promoted their own supervision system for online advertisement.

Analysis on overseas and Chinese leading online advertisement companies

Due to the wrong market strategies and measures after the consolidation, the Market share for Doubleclick declined in 2004. Although it made profit in 2004, multiplied by 2 compared to the same period in 2003, it was still purchased by Hellman \$ Friedman LLC with a fund of USD \$1.1 billion.



Valueclick maintained a high growth rate. Media service shared its major revenue.

Except portals, the majority of Chinese online advertisement website owners adopted the mode alliance. The traffic of many medium and small websites converges to considerable larger traffic in order to take more market shares.

Development trends of online advertisement

The development trends of online advertisement include: various forms, increasing interactivity, stable rise of search engine advertisement market scale, fiercer competition, better industrial chain and reliable supervision system etc.

The market scale of online advertisement in China reached RMB ¥8.2 billion in 2006 (including search engine advertisement).

Paragraph 8

C 中国网络旅游网站的发展 China's E-travel Website Development

E-commerce stands for the development direction of future trading, and its applications bring more and more benefits to the society and economy. E-commerce has become one of the largest sources for global economy growth, and the modern electronic trading measures with strong vitality have become increasingly recognized. Considering the total scale of global e-commerce trading, e-tourism has taken 1/5 of the shares.

In the meanwhile, as a new tourism information platform, network supplies new opportunities for the tourism industry. According to the report of Jupiter Research, in America, the online tourism market revenue was 54 billion US dollars in 2004, which took 20% of the total tourism market revenue. While in China, the total tourism market scale reached 528.6 billion RMB in 2005. According to the statistical data released by China Nation Tour Authority in Sep 2005, the annual online tourism market scale was 4—5 billion RMB, only accounting for 1% of the total tourism market scale. This shows that there's an enormous development potential for China's e-tourism

market.

Currently, the basic client groups in e-tourism market are high level businessmen with powerful consuming ability. However, with the overall increase of the national income, individual tourist will become the main income source for e-tourism markets.

Paragraph 9

E网络旅游的优势 -travel's Advantages

Tourism websites have more advantages than tour companies. Compared with traditional tour companies, information of tour websites is richer, with more reasonable operation modes. Tourists can collect texts, pictures, travel notes, travel destination, accommodation, traffic and other information and can surf other related websites with links and search engines. Tour resource owners and consumers benefited from the characteristics of tour websites such as regional break; economical travel resource integration and no store operations and so on.

The enormous advantages of tourism websites make them able to be integrated with traditional tourism business. If traditional travel companies could make the full use of website advantages and make their products and services available on the internet, there will be a win-win situation. The 2008 Olympic Game just provides such an great opportunity.

Paragraph 10

C中国网上支付和移动支付的发展 China's Online & Mobile Payment Development

Along with the fast-progressing Internet and mobile network in recent years, various kinds of e-commerce emerged, which makes people's life more convenient and colorful. Online payment and mobile payment, being incentive to further development of e-commerce, will become the main payment means of e-commerce by and by.

According to business mode, online payment can be divided into pre-



payment, agency payment, online banking payment and online platform payment. Of which, online platform payment undertaken by online payment platform operator, being an third-party economic entity independent from bank and SP, acts as the role connect users, banks and SPs.

The domestic online payment is mainly based on the debit card system. Thus, risks in online payment can be controlled effectively. But meanwhile, the profit of domestic payment service is also quite low, only taking 0.5% of total trading volume.

Nowadays, the industrialization of mobile payment application emerges as handsets gradually replace cash and credit card in the payment of some shops and automatic seller machines. At present, bank card circulation and handset users have increased to over 0.76 billion and 0.3 billion respectively in China, offering boundless commercial opportunities for the development of mobile payment industry in China. With the prevalence of mobile content and application charges based on SMS, mobile payment has been accepted by and by. However, in-depth applications of mobile payment still need to be cultivated.

Currently, there are five access methods of mobile payment: STK, IVR (Interactive Voice Response), USSD, WAP and WWW. Of which, IVR, STK and WWW are mainly adopted.

Paragraph 11

T移动支付行业的形式 **The Forms of Mobile Payment Business**

Mobile payment business mode has four categories: mobile paying service, mobile wallet service, mobile banking service and mobile credit platform. The former three have been practically applied.

Abide by different roles, mobile payment industrial chain can be divided into three categories: mobile operators-based industrial chain, bank-based industrial chain and the one led by mobile payment operators. The cooperation of mobile operators and banks, with mobile payment platform operated by professional companies, can avoid inherent obstacles in infor-

mation security, product development and resource sharing, etc. when third-party payment platform providers join in. Also it can realize the sharing and management of financial information service and banks' intermediate businesses; and satisfy to the maximum the great demand of users for mobile payment service and information security. Thereby, it is the most suitable business mode for mobile payment development in China.

Cultural Links 文化链接

什么是网络经济

网络经济就是基于网络尤其是互联网所产生的经济活动的总和。它是在信息化时代产生的一种崭新经济现象,表现为经济主体的生产、交换、分配、消费等经济活动,以及金融机构和政府职能部门等主体的经济行为,这些都越来越多地依赖信息网络。他们不仅要从网络上获取大量经济信息,依靠网络进行预测和决策,而且许多交易行为直接在信息网络上进行。网络经济是以信息产业为基础的经济,它以知识为核心,以网络信息为依托,采用最直接的方式拉近服务提供者与服务目标的距离。在网络经济形态下,传统经济行为的网络化趋势日益明显,网络成为企业价值链上各环节的主要媒介和实现场所。

Vocabulary 妙词连珠

three-dimension 三维

cooperation 合作

vanquish 征服,打败

opponent 对手

graphic 平面造型

server 服务器

console 控制台

cartridge 弹药筒,子弹

attack 进攻

scuffle 混战

stratagem 战略,计谋

consignee 收货人

dialog box 对话框

encryption 加密



super-flier 超级快车	communication book 通讯簿
check out 结账	copy 抄送
goods shelves 货架	draft 书稿
menu column 菜单栏	edit 编辑
order form 订单	explorer 资源管理器
preferential price 优惠价	graph 图形, 图表
present 提交	multi-level sub-mailbox
catalogue 商品目录	多级子邮箱
E-store 网上商店	address column 地址栏
freight delivery 货物投递	collection 收藏夹
immaterial commodity 无形商品	connection error 连接错误
material commodity 有形商品	disconnect 断开
virtual shop 虚拟商店	display 显示
document 文件	menu 菜单
deliver 交付	dropdown list 下拉列表
attachment 附件	hypertext link 超文本链接
administrate 管理	key word 关键词
capacity 容量	link column 链接栏

U 房地产业 Unit 10 Real Estate



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. In recent years, improved living conditions have dramatically changed urban attitudes to the home life style.
近年来,城镇居民住房条件的改变,极大地改变了他们的家庭生活方式。
2. Throughout the process of commercializing housing, the Chinese government has followed the principle of “feeling the way across the river.”
住房商业化改革的过程,中国政府运用的是“摸着石头过河”的政策。
3. Since its implementation in 1994, more than 90 percent of public-owned housing in large and medium-sized cities has been sold into private ownership.
1994 年开始执行后,大中城市已有超过 90% 的公房转为私人所有。
4. That most easily achievable is reducing its financial burden.
最容易获得成效的是减少财政负担。
5. The main goal of housing reforms is to give all Chinese citizens the chance to live in their own homes, rather than offer opportunities for investment.
房改的重要目标是让所有的中国居民住上自己的房子,而不是让他们有机会投资房地产。
6. The Chinese real estate industry started in the mid-1980s.
中国的房地产业兴起于 20 世纪 80 年代中期。

7. The Chinese real estate industry, however, has a few snags to resolve before it can maintain healthy growth.
但是,要保持健康的发展,中国的房地产业还要除去一些弊端。
8. Buyers of commodity housing these days are generally young people who expect to move away from their parents and lead lives of their own as they plan an independent future.
近来,买商品房的大都是想搬离父母而计划着自己将来独立生活的年轻人。



Wonderful Paragraph 精彩片段

Paragraph 1

C住房消费 Consuming Houses

In recent years, improved living conditions have dramatically changed urban attitudes to the home lifestyle; property consumption is becoming a main aspect of China's rocketing economy. Potential property purchasers envision house ownership as the most reliable investment as well as the chance to live in privacy and tasteful comfort.

The main points of concern when buying a home, other than price, are the quality of the building and the extent of maintenance provided by the building management. Also to be taken into consideration are the neighbors—whether or not they are in the same income bracket as the buyer and location. The booming residential property market has motivated real estate developers to meet various housing needs, based on levels of consumption. This issue's Special Report looks at the relatively new market phenomenon of housing in China, and at the reform of its housing policy, giving personal accounts of the pitfalls of house purchases. It also compares the generation to whom accommodation was part of their employment package with today's young people, who see it as a privilege worth

waiting and paying for. The report presents a comprehensive update on home buying and the Chinese real estate market.

Paragraph 2

H住房改革(1) **Housing Reform(1)**

Housing reforms began in China with a sizable rent increase, followed by subsidized purchases of old and new public-owned housing by its tenants. The administration of housing construction and sales was split in order to meet varying consumer demands. Current government policy categorizes housing as commodity, low-profit, cost-balance and standard. Commodity housing is generally well constructed and priced beyond average affordability. The other three categories are government-subsidized to various degrees. As an official from the Hunan Provincial Department of Land and Resources explained, “This policy confines the minority, high-income earners to the purchase of commodity housing at market prices. At the same time it enables the majority, low-and medium-income earners to buy housing in the low-profit, cost-balance and standard categories. This policy has proven decisive in propelling residential housing construction in China.”

Throughout the process of commercializing housing, the Chinese government has followed the principle of “feeling the way across the river.” It has accomplished this by conducting pilot experiments prior to publicly promoting any new policy and its measures. One example is the policy that allows for government-subsidized private purchases of public-owned housing. In 1982 Jiangsu’s Changzhou, Jilin’s Siping, Henan’s Zhengzhou and Hubei’s Shashi were pilots for trial subsidized private purchases of newly built public-owned housing. This method of private apartment purchase worked on the basis of the government’s contributing one-third of relevant construction costs and the other two-thirds being shared between the individual and relevant work units. The scheme subsequently went into operation in Beijing, Tianjin, Shanghai and over 80 cities in 23 provinces and autonomous regions. It was promoted across the entire country in 1994.



H住房改革(2) **ousing Reform(2)**

Public-owned housing was originally public property that accumulated under the administration of the planned economy. In July 1994, the State Council issued “The Decision Concerning the Deepening of Urban Housing Reform.” This proposed the establishment of a public housing accumulation fund for urban residents to which they, their workplace and the government contributed. It also set concrete targets as regards increases in rentals and sales of housing. As Li Wu, a doctorate student at Renmin University of China, says, “Housing reforms constituted the largest Chinese welfare project ever, bearing in mind that the urban Chinese had hitherto been living on low incomes under rented roofs. The reforms have contributed substantially to the rapid growth of a new industry.”

In recognition of the sacrifices made in the interests of the country's construction by those that worked under the planned economy, the new housing sale policy incorporates a price deduction scheme based on length of service. Since its implementation in 1994, more than 90 percent of public-owned housing in large and medium-sized cities has been sold into private ownership.

The Chinese government expects housing reforms to achieve four main objectives. That most easily achievable is reducing its financial burden; next is rapid replenishment of housing funds in order to speed up housing construction. The long-term objective is to establish a just and efficient housing system that is conducive to rational labor mobility. The most immediate goal, however, is to create a new economic growth point that will propel the development of related industries.

P 现行公共投资 Popular Public Investment

Apartments and houses sold as commodities are rapidly becoming the most popular form of general public investment. As housing prices have maintained an upward momentum over the past years, many believe that bricks and mortar represent the most value-steady and value-adding form of investment. The wealthy would consequently prefer to invest in a second or even a third apartment than, say, stocks and shares, and young light-pursed first-time buyers would far rather take out a mortgage on an apartment than rent one. Purchasing trends at both ends of the property market have hiked up already high real estate prices.

Zhang Yuanyuan, a 1998 university graduate, works at a foreign company in Beijing. She is seriously considering moving out of her rented accommodation and buying her own apartment. She explains, "Living in a rented apartment makes me feel like a homeless drifter. What's more, my current monthly rent is almost as much as the monthly repayment on a 20-year mortgage would be." There are many others like Zhang Yuanyuan who plan to buy their own apartment because it is more economical than renting one.

Property purchases by young people, however, are easier said than done. Some succeed with the help of their parents, others by getting a mortgage. The average Beijing citizen needs to save every cent of their salary for 27 years before they can afford a 90-square-meter apartment. In 1991, Shanghai followed the example of Singapore in introducing the Public Housing Accumulation Fund system, which makes it easier for people on average incomes to afford their own housing. The system has since gone into force across the entire country. It works by pooling the financial resources of the government, the work unit, some of which provide their employees with housing subsidies, and the individual buyer. Says Ma Yu, who works for a subsidiary of China Telecom, "My monthly salary is not



high, but my unit offers a monthly housing subsidy of RMB 2 000. This, plus my monthly quota from the Public Housing Accumulation Fund, is more than enough to keep up with my monthly mortgage repayments.”

The majority of Chinese housing investors that take out mortgages, however, risk losing out on their investment once house sales exceed demand.

Paragraph 5

H全民性住宅 Housing for All

The main goal of housing reforms is to give all Chinese citizens the chance to live in their own homes, rather than offer opportunities for investment.

In the 1994 “Decision Concerning the Deepening of Urban Housing Reform,” the State Council initiated the State Low-cost Housing Project. This helps low-and medium-income families to purchase their own apartments. In January 1995 the State Council Housing System Reform Leading Group and relevant departments worked out “The State Low-cost Housing Project Implementation Plan,” which marked the project’s formal implementation. Its aim is to construct 1.5 billion square meters of apartment buildings between 1995 and 2000. These blocks are intended for urban low-and medium-income families who have never benefited from allocated housing, or who live in dangerous or seriously over-crowded conditions. Property will be sold to them directly at cost price. The natural effect of this project will be the establishment, step by step, of a housing supply system that operates in a way similar to social security.

For impoverished families to whom even low-priced apartments are out of reach, the government has designed a “Low-Rental Housing Project.” Guangdong Province was the first to implement its own low-rental housing by specifying qualified applicants as “families whose per capita income is lower than the local poverty line as declared by the local government, whose per capita housing space is less than six square meters, and whose



residential registration is in the category of permanent urban residents.”

Housing resources for the project consist of public-owned accommodation that has become available since its former residents moved to new homes, low-rental government constructed housing, and unsold commodity housing purchased by the government. Such housing is strictly for rent, and its tenants are the urban poor.

Paragraph 6

H 房地产热潮 Hot Real Estate

The Chinese real estate industry started in the mid-1980s. Its enormous growth potential has engaged the attention of academic and economic circles as well as the business world. Government officials and scholars can often be seen discussing and debating with real estate developers and buyers whether any “bubbles” exist in the industry.

Chinese real estate has remained, in general, a seller's market with a steadily rising demand. Its main customer base consists of potential buyers of apartments. Prices of commodity housing have maintained a steady upward trend, and made a sharp climb in more recent years. Between January and November of 2005 the average price of apartments under construction or planning in Beijing was RMB 6 776 per square meter, an increase of RMB 1 183 over the same period in 2004. Meanwhile, investment in real estate has increased, to the extent that in 2005 it made up more than half of China's total social investment.

Real estate has links to more than 50 other industries, including construction, building materials, metallurgy, textiles, household electric appliances, furniture, and house remodeling. Real estate investment in developing countries at least doubles the development of relevant industries, according to a World Bank report.

The Chinese real estate industry, however, has a few snags to resolve before it can maintain healthy growth. They are: over-heated growth and investment; over-pricing; and conspicuous structural contradictions. The



latter is reflected in excessive non-residential buildings and ultra-large apartments and the dearth of small apartments and affordable apartment buildings.

Paragraph 7

H住宅的发展历程 **Historical Housing**

Following improvements to living conditions, attitudes in urban China to accommodation and home lifestyle have changed dramatically.

Beijing's housing culture can be traced back to the Song (960—1279) and Yuan (1279—1368) dynasties. Siheyuan (a compound of buildings around a square courtyard) date back to the 12th century, and reached their zenith during the Ming (1368—1644) and Qing (1644—1911) dynasties. After the founding of the People's Republic of China in 1949, uniformly designed apartment blocks were built in order to meet the increased demand for housing. At that time, accommodation was regarded as a state-awarded benefit, but without any right of choice.

Work-allocated housing was an accepted form in the early years of New China. As Qian recalls, "Most people in the community knew one another. When taking a walk after supper, you would bump into various neighbors and stop to chat with each one. There was practically no privacy; all household matters were common knowledge among neighbors and colleagues." After living in work-allocated accommodation for a decade, Qian Yuchen quit his job and went to work for a Sino-foreign joint venture company. One of his motivations for changing his job was the higher salary that would enable him to buy a better apartment. Says Qian, "An income of 40 000 yuan a year is adequate only for a mediocre house in the remote outskirts of town, where transport is inconvenient and there are problems regarding children's schooling and elderly health care."

Rapid economic development and growing demand for commodity houses ushered developers into the housing market. They, along with government officials, have since explored ways of meeting housing needs

based on levels of consumption. To most urbanites, buying a house is the means to a comfortable life, rather than a solution to basic needs.

Paragraph 8

T旧房屋的重新装修 **he Refurbishing**

About three-fifths of new and old houses in big and medium-sized cities have been refurbished, and commodity housing built in recent years has undergone one hundred percent decoration. In super-large cities such as Beijing, Shanghai and Guangzhou, investment in home improvements exceeds RMB 40 billion annually. There are also instances of second-and third-round of refurbishments at an average cost of RMB 80 000.

In the mid-1990s, the fashion in China was to decorate in hotel style. For example, ornate boarding to cover pipes and radiators, suspended ceilings with reserved spaces for light fittings, and cheap wallpaper-covered walls. Furniture was made by carpenters from the countryside.

Northern European style furnishings contrast sharply with Chinese conventions, because they constitute a completely different concept. Ikea, therefore, took a risk as the first foreign enterprise to introduce European and American style furniture to China. The Swedish giant has since become synonymous with a fashionable and tasteful lifestyle. Even the most fashion conscious admit that Ikea has changed the Chinese concept of interior decor, and house owners planning to decorate go there first for inspiration on how to proceed.

Various styles have come into vogue since the start of the new millennium, among them European revivalism, traditional Chinese, and a combination of Chinese and Western styles, all in a wide range of colors and materials. The basic message house owners try to get across with their decor is: "This is my space, the way I like it."

Consumer demand has enlivened the building materials market, furniture supermarkets and mechanized companies. The number of Chinese workers involved in interior decor and renovation has expanded to 6 million,



according to statistics from the Ministry of Construction. Among them, 4 million are engaged exclusively in home renovations. More and more foreign firms are, understandably, hovering on the periphery of this flourishing market. It was in 1998 that Ikea opened its first store in China. Since then a number of other chain stores, including B&Q and HOLA (House of Living Art) of Test Rite, have entered China. The US-based HomeDepot, largest warehouse-style retailer of building materials and home improvement goods on the globe, has set up a procurements center in China, and Law's has followed suit. James Cook, global director of Ernst & Young Retail and Consumer Products, says, "Billions of Chinese people are entering the consumer society, and there is no country in the world more attractive to foreign firms than China."

Paragraph 9

N新型家庭及邻里关系 **New Family and Neighborhood Relations**

"On weekends or holidays I often go back to my old neighborhood to have a chat with my former colleagues, or play cards and mahjong. The friendliness and rapport we share, based on long acquaintance, reminds me of the time I was carefree," admits Qian Yuchen, a common people lives in Beijing.

Qian's new apartment block incorporates a club where residents meet to chat, have a cup of coffee, go swimming or simply work out in the gym. Qian went there once or twice, but found that most of the other residents wanted to talk about business, whereas he, not being a CEO, just wanted to relax.

The Internet is the main communications channel between Qian and his new neighbors. Each occupant is given an email address on the housing net that acts as a source of service information and also invites house owners' comments and suggestions. It was through Qian's housing net that he joined in the seven-day May Day holiday car rally to Xinjiang organized by his fellow apartment owners.

The market mechanism's most obvious influence on Chinese social life is the way house owners of the same income level create their own Internet community. This enables house buyers to choose their neighbors according to their income levels.

Qian chose his present neighborhood because, he states candidly: "As CEOs were the residential subdistrict's target, I assumed this would mean high-flying neighbors and guarantee first-class property management and service."

Commodity housing is distinct from multi-household residential courtyards and allocated housing. The latter are homes to residents of various professions, and are generally lacking in public affairs management. The former are run by property management companies with clear-cut responsibilities that follow strict management guidelines. It seems to be the rule that the higher the house price, the better the service offered. This is because the targeted purchasers are high-income earners at a time of unprecedented housing development.

In recent years there has been greater conflict between house owners and property management companies. Qian explains, "Most problems stem from the fees charged to house owners by property management companies. Others are based on complaints from house owners regarding housing quality, or differences between actual house structure and that shown on the blueprints included in the pre-sale contract." A responsible person from the China Consumers' Association commented that these are the consequence of inadequate laws and regulations, and is confident that, "... following perfected legislation, these problems will just fade away."

Qian's greatest recent headache was reaching agreement with his mother on the interior design of their new home. As the new place is spacious, Qian's mother moved in some of her old furniture, but it looks incongruous in such a contemporary setting. Despite Qian's hiring carpenters to update the look of these pieces made in the 1960s, they still look clumsy and coarse. Finally Qian and his mother agreed that the old furniture should



go in his mother's bedroom. This is not the only problem that has arisen between them as a result of generation gap type differences of opinion.

Buyers of commodity housing these days are generally young people who expect to move away from their parents and lead lives of their own as they plan an independent future. New houses cater to various tastes, and bring subtle changes to people's lives, relationships and sensibilities. The happy medium between traditional and contemporary accommodation is yet to be found.

Paragraph 10

C 古建筑物的保存 Conserving Old Houses

Many old houses now face the threat of demolition. Statistics also indicate that Beijing's alleys decrease at the rate of 600 per year. The Beijing municipal government has designated 25 conservation areas for old houses that cover 37 percent of the old downtown area. They mostly comprise Ming and Qing dynasties siheyuan. The remaining 60 percent of old houses, of no less historical value, remain unprotected.

This has prompted enquiries from various quarters into ways of conserving these examples of Chinese residential architecture. In Zhangwan Village, Zhangjiawan Town, Tongzhou District of Beijing, one area consisting of various siheyuan has been converted into a siheyuan museum.

The Hangzhou municipal government recently issued a decree regarding the conservation of old houses. It was executed by volunteers familiar with the territory. They were also made responsible for searching out and recommending old houses that merit conservation, on the basis of historical, cultural and scientific value.

The Suzhou municipal government is trying out a new conservation mode. The government allocates funds to the renovation of infrastructure facilities, and residents themselves contribute funds towards refurbishing interiors, on the understanding that they conserve the original framework.

In view of the Chinese preference for courtyards, real estate developers

in various localities are optimistic about the future of courtyard-style commodity housing. Contemporary courtyard houses are equipped with modern living facilities, as well as efficient sound insulation.

Due to land scarcity, most new courtyard housing is in remote areas. The number of such houses is small, and their prices are high. Even so, they sell like hotcakes.



中国房地产业

近 20 年来,中国经历了两次房地产业的增长周期,第三次房地产业的增长周期已经展开。第一次是从 1981 年开始至 80 年代末,中国大陆初步形成房地产业和房地产市场。第二次是从 1992 年开始,房地产业高速发展,到 1997 年跌入谷底,1998 年出现恢复性增长,1999 年平稳增长。2000 年,新一轮房地产业的增长周期启动。从整体上来看,20 世纪 90 年代,中国房地产业迅速进入成长期,并具备了高成长性产业的特征。1994—2001 年,房地产开发投资年平均增长 18.7%,2001 年高达 25.3%,2002 年 1~6 月更高达 32.9%。房地产开发投资占国内生产总值的比重已连续多年达到 4%~5%,2001 年这一参数达到 6.51%。1991—1999 年房地产销售面积年平均增 21.70%,1991—2001 年,房地产销售额年均增长 34.55%。

新一轮房地产业增长周期发生在中国正走向成熟的经济成长阶段,城市化和再城市化快速发展,城市人口在总人口中的比重迅速上升,人均住房面积不断扩大,必然支撑房地产业的高速发展。据统计,2001 年城镇人口在总人口中的比重为 37.7%,城镇人口为 48 064 万人。到 2020 年,城市人口在总人口中的比重将达 60%,考虑到总人口变化的因素,城市人口将达 9 亿人左右,城市人口的大幅度增加将产生相应的房地产需求。2000 年,城市人均住房建筑面积为 20.4 平方米,预计 2010 年可达 25 平方米。随着人均居住面积不断扩大,住宅需求将成倍增长,因而房地产潜在需求空间很大。因此,新一轮房地产业增长周期的景气时期延展是由中国所处的走向成熟的经济成长阶段决定的。



Vocabulary

妙词连珠

resettlement plan 搬迁计划	urban renewal 城市更新
moving to a new house 搬入新家	urban planning 城市规划
protection of cultivated land 保护耕地	carpet area 室内面积
protection of historical cultural treasures 保护历史文化珍品	indoor lighting 室内照明
be listed as dangerous house 被列入危房	interior decoration 室内装饰
financial subsidies 财政补贴	livability 适居性
resettlement 拆迁	an old siheyuan 四合院
resettlement office 拆迁办公室	household with the most difficult living conditions 特困住房户
resettlement plan 拆迁计划	land administration 土地管理
resettlement policy 拆迁政策	land administration bureau 土地管理局
city development 城市发展	land agent 土地管理人
urban development planning 城市发展计划	landscaping 土地开发
city's real estate market 城市房地产市场	landscape planning 土地开发计划
town improvement scheme 城市改造计划	housing distribution system 住房分配制度
	housing welfare 住房福利
	housing reform 住房改革

U 教育 Unit 11 Education

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. China develops its preschool education in various ways, by mobilizing the resources of the whole society.
中国利用现代化资源开展了各式各样的学前教育方式。
2. With play as the basic form of activity, kindergartens create a good environment for learning and provide the infants with opportunities and conditions to exercise and display their abilities.
作为最基础的幼儿园教育为孩子的学习提供了良好的环境,也为孩子提供了锻炼及展示自己的平台。
3. Conducted on the basis of the students having high-school education, adult education is an important part of higher education.
因为已经有高中教育作为基础,成人教育就成为了高等教育的一部分了。
4. The purpose of adult education in China is to raise the educational level and that of professional technology.
成人教育的目的是为了提高他们的教育水平和职业技能。
5. The stage of the “211 Engineering” project was ended.
211 工程的工作已经完成。
6. To lay a foundation for making a number of universities match or nearly match the world's first class universities around 2010.
为在 2010 年左右大学数量能达到或接近世界先进水平而奠定基础。

7. The state has worked out a qualification and examination system for kindergarten teachers.
国家已经制定出考查幼儿园教育资格的考试体系。
8. The Chinese government has all along paid great attention to special education.
中国政府一直对特殊教育非常重视。
9. There are more than 1 000 vocational training institutions for the disabled in China.
中国现有 1 000 多所残疾人职业培训机构。
10. In 1998, the Ministry of Education approved an experiment in modern long-distance education at Tsinghua University.
1998 年教育部在清华大学试点实验了现代远程教育。



Wonderful Paragraph 精彩片段

Paragraph 1

P 学前教育及中学教育 Preschool and Secondary Education

China develops its preschool education in various ways, by mobilizing the resources of the whole society. While local governments run kindergartens, work units, social organizations and individuals are also encouraged to open kindergartens. Kindergartens apply the principle of combining child care with education, and ensure that the infants achieve all-round physical, intellectual, moral and aesthetic development, providing them with a harmonious coordination of body and mind. With play as the basic form of activity, kindergartens create a good environment for learning and provide the infants with opportunities and conditions to exercise and display their abilities.

The state has worked out a qualification and examination system for kindergarten teachers. At present, there are 67 kindergarten teachers'

schools in China, and the infant education as an area of study in vocational high schools is considerably well developed. The Regulations on the Administration of Kindergartens, the Regulations on the Kindergarten Work, and other laws and regulations issued by the state have put kindergartens on the road to systematized scientific development.

Paragraph 2

V 职业教育 Vocational Education

The Chinese government issued the Vocational Education Law of the PRC in 1996, making explicit stipulations regarding the status, role, structure, functions and duties, management system and fund channels for vocational education.

China's vocational education is mainly composed of advanced vocational schools, technical secondary schools, skilled workers' schools, vocational middle schools, vocational training centers and other technical training schools for adults and training institutions run by social organizations or individuals. Vocational education is divided into three levels: advanced, secondary and primary levels, which coordinate closely with each other.

Advanced vocational education, the highest level of vocational education in China, is still in the initial stage. Conducted on the basis of the students having high-school education, it is an important part of higher education. At present, schools offering advanced vocational education are: 87 professional and technical colleges, short-term vocational universities and technical junior colleges; several dozen professional junior colleges, now undergoing reforms; 133 higher learning schools for adults (with 188 areas of study offered), where experiments in advanced vocational education are conducted; and 18 technical secondary schools which offer advanced vocational education classes. Their major task is to cultivate practical and technological specialists for the front line of the nation's economic construction. In accordance with the development program for vocational education, the existing system of advanced vocational education is to be re-



formed and restructured, and supplemented with a small number of leading vocational secondary schools to promote advanced vocational education and gradually develop into colleges of vocational technology.

Vocational secondary education is the principal part of China's vocational education. It has three forms: technical secondary schools, vocational high schools and skilled workers' schools.

Paragraph 3

A 成人教育 Adult Education

Just after the founding of the PRC, when illiterates accounted for more than 80 percent of the nation's population, the Chinese government called on the people to "develop functional literacy and gradually reduce illiteracy," which was the beginning of adult education in China.

The purpose of adult education in China is to raise the educational level and that of professional technology, and the practical capabilities of the people who, while working, wish to change their jobs or are waiting for employment; provide literacy education for illiterates; continue to provide education for people who have left regular schools, in accordance with their educational levels; provide continued education for people who have received higher education to renew and expand their knowledge and enhance their professional proficiency; and develop colorful social and cultural life education to help all China's people lead civilized, healthy and scientific lives.

Adult higher learning institutions include radio and TV universities, workers' colleges, farmers' colleges, colleges for managerial personnel, colleges for in-service teachers training, independent correspondence colleges, and ordinary colleges and universities offering adult education (such as correspondence departments, evening universities and teachers' in-service training classes), supplemented by educational TV programs and higher-learning examination programs for the self-taught. Secondary schools for adult education include vocational secondary schools, ordinary middle



schools holding secondary vocational classes for workers and cadres, adult middle schools, adult technical training schools, farmers' cultural and technical schools and agricultural radio and TV schools, supplemented by the secondary vocational examination program for the self-taught. In addition, there are various face-to-face teaching schools and correspondence schools characterized by in-service training, guidance and other training. The teaching methods provided by these schools include full-time classroom teaching, and long-distance instruction for self-taught students by providing teaching materials, and audio and video materials. The study methods include full-time, part-work and part-study, and spare-time methods.

Education comes in two categories-general and specific. The former includes the regular college, junior college, vocational secondary school and middle school levels, and the latter includes elimination of illiteracy, rural practical technology training, on-the-job training, education for single-discipline qualification certificates, education for vocational certificates and post-graduate continued education.

Paragraph 4

H 高等教育(1) Higher Education(1)

The first stage of the "211 Engineering" project is nearing its end. In the course of five years of hard work, and on the basis of discussions and examinations by the related departments, about 600 projects concerning key disciplines have been listed for completion in 100 colleges and universities across the country. These disciplines cover humanities and sociology, economics, politics and law, basic sciences, resources and the environment, basic industry, new and advanced technology, medical science and hygiene, and others. The Ministry of Education demands that the second stage of this project be completed within five years. During these five years, the input into and support for these schools will be continuously enhanced. China will do its best to make the academic level of these key disciplines reach the state advanced level by 2005, so as to lay a foundation for mak-



ing a number of universities match or nearly match the world's first class universities around 2010.

Paragraph 5

H高等教育(2) **Higher Education(2)**

As China established a socialist market economy system and deepened the reforms of various undertakings, the higher education system reform has become the crux of various reforms in higher education. The general objective for the reforms is to bring into better balance the relations between the government, society and institutions of higher learning, establish and strive to perfect a new system that, while still macro-managed by the state within an overall plan, turns institutions of higher learning outward to face society, and gives schools autonomy in providing education. After many years of effort, higher education has made considerable progress in the reform of management and investment systems, as well as in the personnel and distribution systems. In 1999, the Central Institute of Arts and Crafts was incorporated by Tsinghua University, and in 2000 Beijing University and Beijing Medical Sciences University were combined to form the new Beijing University. At the beginning of 2000, the General Office of the State Council published Suggestions for the Further Speeding Up of the Socialization of Logistics of Universities and Colleges. This document put forward the task of realizing the basic socialization of university and college logistics in most parts of China within about three years, starting from 2000. The focus of the reform is the logistics of students' living conditions. The principle of mainly relying on and fully utilizing the abilities of society as a whole for the provision of new dormitories and other logistic service facilities is stressed, while the central, provincial and city governments should provide necessary financial support, in accordance with the different conditions. All student dormitories and other logistic service facilities shall be operated and managed using a new mechanism.

Paragraph 6

S 特殊教育 Special Education

The Chinese government has all along paid great attention to special education. With the initiation of the reform and opening policies in 1978, China's special education entered a new development period. The state has issued a series of laws and regulations which make explicit stipulations on safeguarding the rights to education of the disabled, formulated a series of both general and specific policies for reforming and developing the sphere of special education, while earmarking special funds for this purpose. According to statistics, China has 1 426 special education schools for blind, deaf and mentally retarded children and teenagers, and some 5 400 special education classes attached to ordinary middle schools, with a total of 320 000 students. In addition, a large number of disabled children and teenagers study in ordinary schools. Currently, more than 1 700 rehabilitation institutions for deaf infants are operating in China, and over 70 000 children have been or are being trained there. Furthermore, there are more than 1 000 vocational training institutions for the disabled in China.

Paragraph 7

M 现代远程教育 Modern Long Distance Education

In 1998, the Ministry of Education approved an experiment in modern long-distance education at Tsinghua University, Zhejiang University, Hunan University and Beijing Posts and Telecommunications University. In 1999 and early 2000, the experiment was expanded to three other schools – Beijing University, Central Radio and Television University and China Accounting Correspondence School run by the Ministry of Finance. In 1999, the former four universities, the first group approved for the experiment, enrolled more than 900 students, who were taught through the Internet, and the Central Radio and Television University enrolled 40 000 students. Through two years



of experiment, the schools have formed a teaching model via the Internet, and developed a group of related courses and resources, which played an important role in promoting the experiment. Besides, the Ministry of Education has started the Program of Training Tomorrow's Female Teachers, to train female teachers in primary and middle schools and support education in poor and western areas. To develop modern long-distance education and frame a lifelong educational system the ministry has earmarked special funds for the Plan for Promoting 21st Century Education to promote the development of the Cernet trunk network. Now the 155M experimental line of Cernet connecting Beijing with Shanghai and Wuhan, and Wuhan with Guangzhou is in operation.



Cultural Links 文化链接

“十五”期间农村教育的主要成就

党中央、国务院高度重视农村教育工作。“十五”期间,国务院先后召开全国基础教育工作会议和全国农村教育工作会议,明确了农村教育重中之重战略地位。国家先后实施和出台了一系列加快农村教育发展的重大工程和政策,如国家贫困地区义务教育工程、农村中小学危房改造工程、西部地区“两基”攻坚计划等,改善了我国农村地区特别是贫困地区基础教育的办学条件,大大缓解了农村贫困家庭学生上学难的矛盾。2005 年底,国务院又决定改革农村义务教育经费保障机制,把发展农村义务教育所需经费全面纳入公共财政保障范围。这一惠及亿万农民群众的重大战略举措,将使我国农村义务教育的面貌发生根本性变化。

“十五”期间,我们把巩固、提高“基本普及九年义务教育、基本扫除青壮年文盲”的成果,作为推动我国教育改革和发展的基础性工作,通过采取一系列政策措施,加大了巩固、提高的力度,使“两基”迈上了新台阶。到 2005 年,全国普及九年义务教育的地区人口覆盖率超过 95%,比 2000 年提高了近 10 个百分点;全国共有小学在校生 10864.07 万人,小学学龄儿童入学率达 99.15%,比 2000 年提高了 0.05 个百分点;共有初中在校生 6214.94 万人,初中阶段入学率超过 95%,比 2000 年提高 6 个百分点以上,初中毕业生升学率 69.68%,比 2000 年提高了 18.51 个百分点。学前教育

稳步发展,2005 年全国共有在园(包括学前班)幼儿 2179.03 万人,入园率达到 41.4%,比 2000 年提高了 1.92 个百分点。扫盲教育进一步推进,“十五”期间全国共扫除文盲 971.73 万人,青壮年文盲率控制在 4% 左右。民族教育、特殊教育也在不断发展。

Vocabulary
妙词连珠

scientific 科学实验	science of thinking 思维科学
scientific inquiry 科学探索	modern science 现代科学
scientific system 科学体系	psychology 心理科学
scientific research 科学研究	information science 信息科学
scientific apparatus 科学仪器	medicine science 医学
science of history 历史学	applied science 应用科学
agricultural science 农业科学	linguistic science 语言科学
social science 社会科学	politics 政治学
life science 生命科学	philosophy 哲学
experimental science 实验科学	natural science 自然科学

2 中国的新政策及改革

China's New Policies and Reforms

U 南水北调工程 Unit 1 South-to-North Water Transfer Project



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. The first task is to heighten the dam of the Danjiangkou Reservoir from 157 metres to 170 metres to enlarge storage capacity to 29.05 billion cubic metres from the current level of 11.6 billion.
第一项任务就是要将丹江口水库的大坝由原来的 157 米建高到 170 米,目的是把它的蓄水量由现在的 116 亿立方米增加到 290.5 亿立方米。
2. The reservoir will then extend another 324 square kilometres, affecting more than 250 000 people in Shiyan of Hubei Province and Xi-chuan County in Henan Province.
这个水库将扩建 324 平方公里,影响了湖北十堰及河南西川县的 25 万人民群众。
3. The project, which was first proposed in 1958, aims to divert water from the South to the North to ensure the water supply for farming and industry in northern China.
这项工程第一次在 1958 年提出,目的是为了把南方的水调到北方,用于工农业发展。

4. After 40 years of investigation and analysis, the project will have three water diversion routes: the east route, middle route and west route.
经过了 40 年的调查与分析, 这项工程分成了三条线路: 东线、中线和西线。
5. The three planned routes are designed to connect the Yangtze with the three largest rivers in the North: the Yellow, the Huaihe and the Haihe rivers.
三条线路把长江与北方三大河流即: 黄河、淮河和海河连接起来了。
6. It is especially problematic in China's northern region as water resources in China are unevenly distributed.
中国的水资源分布不平衡, 北方地区的问题尤为严重。
7. It's called the "South-to-North Water Transfer" Project.
这项工程叫做“南水北调”。
8. It will only take 5% of the Yangtze's water, but a lot of environmental activists are still afraid that it will upset the ecological balance of the Yangtze River.
虽然只会调用长江总水量的 5%, 但很多环保人士仍然担心这一工程会破坏长江流域的生态平衡。
9. Despite the costs, these measures are important.
尽管成本高, 这些措施还是很重要的。
10. Availability of water is vital to a nation's economic development and social stability.
提高水资源的利用效率对于国家的经济发展和社会稳定至关重要。
11. Currently, of China's 668 cities, 400 have water shortage problems.
当前, 中国的 668 个城市中有 400 个城市都存在缺水的问题。
12. Maybe the government can raise prices in order to curb consumption of water. It sounds drastic, but they need to ensure that water resources can satisfy the demands of the nation.
政府也许可以提高水价来减少水资源的消耗, 这听起来似乎有些



过激,但政府必须保护水资源能够满足整个国家的需要。

13. But the fact that this issue is getting more attention seems hopeful. Public awareness of the problem is vital. Not enough people are aware that China is a water deficient country.

但现在对缺水问题的进一步关注,看上去增加了解决问题的希望。重要的是公众要意识到这一问题,因为意识到中国的一个缺水国家的人还不多。

14. By making the public aware of the problem, the government may change peoples' habits so they consume less water.

通过呼吁公众注意这一问题,政府也许能够改变人们的用水习惯,节约用水。



Wonderful Paragraph 精彩片段

Paragraph 1

W南水北调工程 ater Transfer Project

It is reported that huge water project which aims to throw a lifeline to North China residents has won approval for its technical detail.

Preparatory work for the trans-regional “South-to-North Water Transfer” Project has met the technical requirements ahead of construction later this year, said Zhang Jiyao, vice-minister of water resources.

“Consensus has been reached on all aspects of the project, including priorities, layout, water-pollution controls, water-saving measures, protection of ecosystems, investment shares and water pricing,” Zhang said.

Workers are now waiting for the signal from the central government to break ground on the scheme. The first task is to heighten the dam of the Danjiangkou Reservoir from 157 metres to 170 metres to enlarge storage capacity to 29.05 billion cubic metres from the current level of 11.6 billion.

The reservoir will then extend another 324 square kilometres, affecting

more than 250 000 people in Shiyan of Hubei Province and Xichuan County in Henan Province. According to plans drafted last year, the expanded Danjiangkou Reservoir will provide 9.5 billion cubic metres of water annually to Beijing, Tianjin, and cities in Hebei, Henan and Hubei provinces. It will be able to provide 13—14 billion cubic metres by 2030. Tang ruled out the possibility that the water project, after being diverted to the North, will impact on water utilization along the middle and lower reaches of Hanjiang River.

Water levels of the Hanjiang along its lower reaches will be raised to guarantee shipping. The project, which was first proposed in 1958, aims to divert water from the South to the North to ensure the water supply for farming and industry in northern China, where water shortage is restricting the sustainable development of the economy.

After 40 years of investigation and analysis, the project will have three water diversion routes: the east route, middle route and west route. The three planned routes are designed to connect the Yangtze with the three largest rivers in the North: the Yellow, the Huaihe and the Haihe rivers.

Paragraph 2

B 2007 年北京人可能饮用上来自长江的水 **Beijingers Is Able to Drink** **Water from Yangtze River in 2007**

The middle-route construction of China's ambitious south-to-north water diversion project will start this year, the Beijing Morning Post reported. If thing goes smoothly, Beijingers will be able to drink the water of the Yangtze River in 2007.

Pipeline will be laid simultaneously at the middle-route project's starting point of Danjiangkou City in central China and its ending point of Beijing.

In the Chinese capital, an 80—kilometer underground pipeline will be laid, at a cost of 10 billion Yuan.

When the pipeline is put into use, 1.2 billion cubic meters of fresh water will be channeled annually to the city. Then, the rivers and lakes in Bei-



ing will no more give off unbearable stink.

With an estimated cost of 100 billion yuan, the south-to-north water diversion project will have three water diversion routes, namely the east route, middle route and west route. It will divert water from the Yangtze River Valleys to the North China Plain, which is subject to drought.

Once the project is completed in five to ten years, some 38 billion to 48 billion cubic meters of water will be transferred yearly to north China.

Paragraph 3

W 中国的水资源状况 Water Resources Condition of China

The total water resources in China are 2 810 billion m^3 . Based on the calculated population and farmland in 1997, water resources per capita is 2 200 m^3 , only 1/4 of the world's average. It is predicted that in the year 2030, if the population reaches 1.6 billion in China, water resources per capita will be only 1 700 m^3 , which reaches the warning criterion of water shortage recognized worldwide, water resources per mu will be 1 900 m^3 , equivalent to 4/5 of the world's average.

Water and land resources are not only insufficient in total amount, but also are unevenly distributed, i. e. with sufficient water and insufficient land in the South but sufficient land and insufficient water in the North. 80.4% of water resources in China is distributed in the Changjiang River (Yangtze river) basin and to the south of it. However, this area has 53.5% of the population, 35.2% of the farmland and 54.8% of GDP of the whole country. In this area, water resources is 3 480 m^3 per capita and 4 300 m^3 per mu, this area is characterized by populous people, insufficient land, well-developed economy and relatively rich water resources.

The Northern part to the Changjiang River lives 44.4% of the population, owns 59.2% of the farmland, 43.4% of GDP, but only 14.7% of water resources of the whole country. In this area, the average water resources is 747 m^3 per capita, 471 m^3 per mu, which is characterized by populous people, sufficient land, moderately developed economy, but



scarce water resources. In particular the Huanghe River (Yellow River), the Huaihe River and the Haihe River basins are most outstanding. Although the total area of the three river basins owns 39.4% of the farmland, 34.7% of the population and 32.4% of the GDP, but only 7.7% of water resources of the whole country. In these three river basins, average water resources is only 500 m^3 per capita and less than 400 m^3 per mu. This area suffers the most serious contradiction of water demand versus supply and most serious unmatched condition of water resources with economic and social development.

All the Chinese big rivers flow from west to east, being separated from each other by divides. Up to now, a complete water net system has not been established which allows perfect allocation and regulation of water resources. Flooding / water logging in the South and drought in the North remain being the hidden disasters of the Chinese nationality.

Water and land resources are very unbalanced. Along with the growth of population and the economic development, the contradiction between water supply and demand will become more and more acute, the ecological environment will become more and more worsened. These will not only hinder the normal development of the North, but also affect the sustainable economic and social development of the whole country. Thus the implementation of water diversion across the river basins is a critical measure for guaranteeing a sustainable development in the new century.

Paragraph 4

C南水北调工程规划的不断完善 **Constant perfection of the schemes of "South-to-North Water Transfer" Project**

In the 50's of the 20th century, the Huanghe River Commission, and the Planning Office of the Changjiang River (now the Changjiang River Commission) covered water diversion schemes in various planning documents and carried out analysis on the possibility, necessity and options of water diversion. In August 29, 1958, the "Instructions to Water Resources Work"



of the CPC Central Committee pointed out: to divert water from south (mainly from the Changjiang River) to north should be given priority for the formation of relatively long-term plans in the whole country, i. e. to accelerate the pace of making a unified plan for connecting water systems of the Changjiang with the Huaihe, the Huanghe, the Hanjiang and the Haihe River basins. This is the first time for “South-to-North Water Transfer” being formally written in the document of the Central Committee.

Within the following 40 years and more, investigation, planning, study or verification on the strategic concept of “South-to-North Water Transfer” Project in various scales or at different levels have been carried out without interruption, even though with ups and downs. A great deal of study works have been done by the Ministries, including Ministry of Water Resources (MWR), Departments in the Provinces (Municipalities), as well as scientific and research institutions. The layout of three routes, namely the East Route, Middle Route and West Route is the consequence of a long-time study, being selected among more than 50 alternatives. At the meantime, people acquired more sophisticated knowledge about the laws of economy, society and nature, and the research of “South-to-North Water Transfer” Project developed more and more in depth. A number of valuable achievements of research and project entities for promoting economic development and protecting the area were formed.

Since the 80's of the 20th century, along with the rapid economic and social development, together with the effects of climatic change, the contradiction of water shortage in North China becomes more serious, the losses and environmental deterioration due to water shortage become more apparent. Preparation work of the Project has to be accelerated. Specific requirements were all documented by the Central Government in the 7th, 8th, 9th and 10th Five-year Plans.

In line with the requirement of the Central Government, relevant departments and specialists of various fields put great efforts on speeding up the early-stage preparation work and achieved a series of notable results, which established the solid base for the implementation of “South-to-North



Water Transfer" Project.

Paragraph 5

W节约水资源 ater Saving

At present, in North China water shortage is severe on the one hand, serious waste of water still exists on the other hand. If water saving is not considered as a priority, the scale of engineering work may become excessively large, the investment may be overstocked and the phenomenon of "the more water diverted, the more waste" may happen. Therefore, "Key Points of Water Saving Plan for "South-to-North Water Transfer" was worked out while making the General Plan. The receiving areas of the Middle Route and East Route are relatively advanced in water saving, but still there exist certain potentials for further.

Paragraph 6

P污染的控制 ollution Control

Pollution control is of critical importance in the East Route for "South-to-North Water Transfer". The East Route of "South-to-North Water Transfer" shall divert water from the existing rivers and lakes to the North, however pollution in these rivers and lakes are relatively serious. A strict pollution control is closely related to the sustainable development of the area and success of the water diversion project in the East Route. Thus pollution control is the key point in the planning of water diversion in the East Route.

In order to ensure the rationality of the proposal on pollution control in the East Route, a Plan of Pollution Control in the East Route was developed under the General Plan by China Environment Science Research Institute. The Plan of Pollution Control is aimed at improving quality of diverted water to the standard of Class III. This plan includes three major schemes: Clear Water Passageway, Water Use Safeguarding and Water Quality Improvement. Clear Water Passageway is targeted at zero discharge of polluted



water into the main canals for water diversion with an investment of 16.13 billion Yuan. 102 sewage treatment plants are planned to be built in the cities. These plants are supplemented by necessary cutoffs of pollutants and integrated river basin management, so as to ensure the water quality of the mains reaching Class III.

Water Use Safeguarding Scheme is to protect water quality in the urban area of Tianjin Municipality and West-to-East Water Diversion in Shandong Province. It is planned to invest 3.47 billion Yuan for building 5 sewage treatment plants in the cities, 3 diversion projects for cutoff of pollutants, so that water used in the planned area can meet the standard of Class III.

Water Quality Improvement Scheme is to upgrade water quality of the Weiyun River, Zhangweixin River, mainstream of the Huaihe River and Hongze Lake. The investment is 3.64 billion Yuan, for building 26 sewage treatment plants in the cities, closing 35 paper mills with pulp production capacity below 20 000 tons per year, so as to ensure water quality of main stream of the Huaihe River reaching class III, water quality in the branches of the Hongze Lake reaching Class IV, and to ensure the COD concentration in the section of the Weiyun River in Henan Province lower than 70mg/l, then pollution to the coastal areas of Shandong Province can be prevented.

The Plan is an achievement made by energetic efforts of relevant departments and specialists. The status of pollution is clarified in the report, which is specifically oriented and grasps the key point of comprehensive application of three schemes. The plan shows that by taking water diversion as an opportunity, all the districts along the diversion route will pay high attention to and undertake the responsibility of pollution control and industrial restructuring. By so doing, the East Route will become a clear water passageway ensuring Class III water entering the North.

E 生态环境的保护 Ecological Environmental Protection

The General Plan should look at the situation as a whole, not only consider the water demand in the North, but also consider the ecological effect in the South.

In the General Plan, the ecological and environmental protection plan is coordinated with the plans of pollution control and ecological construction of the four river basins of Changjiang, Huanghe, Huaihe and Haihe, some of these plans are under implementation. According to the characteristics of ecological and environmental impact, the whole area is divided into water source area, route area and water use area. Ecological and environmental protection plans for each area were worked out. The research on the impact on the Changjiang river mouth has been carried out. Four issues on ecology and environment were raised, namely, the ecological protection of the middle and lower reaches of the Hanjiang River, the prevention of salt water intrusion into the Changjiang river mouth, the safe operation of the middle Route, and pollutant cutoff and drainage of water logging. Mode of water use has to be changed, a unified and optimized allocation of the diverted water with local existing water should be implemented. It is planned to complete the Ten-Year Harnessing Works of Huanghe, Huaihe and Haihe Rivers, Pollution Control Project in the East Route and Water Resources Protection Project of the Capital in the 21st century. It also includes supplementary projects for ecological protection of the middle and lower reaches of the Hanjiang River and water diversion area of the Changjiang estuary. Safe protection system will be designed for the water conveyance structures so as to ensure the ecological safety of the area. An overall plan for ecological and environmental protection will be worked out which will be implemented during the process of Project construction. The plan should have definite objective, countermeasures and tasks.

Defining the project scale in accordance with Urban Water Resources



Plan for “South-to-North Water Transfer” Project, Water Resources Plan of the Haihe River Basin and the results of rational water resources allocation in the Huanghe, Huaihe and Haihe River Basins.

The project scale should match with the volume of water demand. For this reason, relevant departments and scientific research institutes were organized for making the Plan on rational allocation of water resources in the Huang-Huai-Hai Area and Water Resources Plan of the Haihe River Basin, as well as water resources plans for 44 cities at the prefecture level along the East and Middle Routes of the Project.

Paragraph 8

U 城市水资源的规划 **Urban Water Resources Plan**

The scope of Urban Water Resources Plan of “South-to-North Water Transfer” Project includes seven provinces or municipalities of Beijing, Tianjin, Hebei, Shandong, Henan, Jiangsu, Hubei. The compilation of the Plan was conducted by the Government of each Province or Municipality, by organizing the Departments of Planning, Water Resources, Urban Construction, Environment Protection. The plan made an overall analysis of water saving, pollution control and recycling of polluted water, groundwater exploitation, water plant and distribution system, water demand versus water supply, water price reform, management and policies and so on. The plan was prepared separately by each city, then grouped and coordinated as a unified planning report of the Province after examination, review and acceptance of the Provinces (Municipalities).

According to the Plan, the actual water use at present is 12.8 billion m^3 in the cities, which includes 3.6 billion m^3 over-extraction of groundwater. If further exploitation of local water resources be taken, it will leave a water deficit of 10.4 billion m^3 in these cities by the year 2010, and 17.4 billion m^3 by the year 2030, even under the condition of considering water saving, reuse of polluted water, control of groundwater over-extraction and worsening of the ecological environment. By the year 2010 and 2030, 12.9



billion m^3 and 15.5 billion m^3 of water should be supplied by the East Route /Middle Route of “South-to-North Water Transfer” Project respectively.

At present, the work is already completed and the Plan was approved by the specialist team organized by SDPC and MWR, in alliance with MOC, SEPA and CIECC, this plan defines the scale of short term water diversion in the East Route and Middle Route.

Paragraph 9

W海河流域的水资源规划 **Water Resources Plan of the Haihe River Basin**

Haihe River Basin possesses a very important and strategic status in China, and is one of the key areas of receiving water of “South-to-North Water Transfer” Project. Water Resources Plan of the Haihe River Basin extended and revised the hydrological series of the basin, made a systematic study on the changes of groundwater storage and its over-extraction, and carried out analysis and assessment on the present situation of water resources utilization based on a large amount of basic data. It shows that the mean annual water shortage is 7.5 billion m^3 in the Haihe River Basin at present. This means that the present social and economic development of the Haihe River basin has been gained to a considerable degree on the basis of scarifying the environment. In the Water Resources Plan of the Haihe River Basin, after fully considering water saving, pollution treatment and tapping of potentials of local water resources and re-allocation, the shortage of water in Haihe River Basin will be 13.7 billion m^3 by the year 2010, and 21.5 billion m^3 by the year 2030. It is impossible to keep a sustainable development in the 21st century merely by water saving, pollution control and tapping the potentialities of the river basin itself. “South-to-North Water Transfer” Project must be put into operation and this conclusion generally represents the present situation and features of the Haihe River Basin.



Paragraph 10

R合理的水资源位置——黄淮海地区 Rational Water Resources Location in the Huang-Huai-Hai Area

The degree of water resources exploitation is quite high in the Huang-Huai-Hai area currently, being much higher than the rational limit of 40% as commonly recognized worldwide. The General Plan of Water Resources in Huang-Huai-Hai makes a general allocation of water resources in this area. In this allocation, the diverted water is firstly supplied for urban domestic and industrial use, this supply will replace the original agricultural and ecological water use but presently taken over for urban and industrial use. The reuse of treated polluted water for agriculture and the interchange of water inside and outside the receiving area are also considered. Generally speaking, the potential of local water resources exploitation is very limited. Some measures have been adopted to alleviate the water shortage, such as the reinforcing of dangerous reservoirs, the full use of rain storm water, the industrial restructuring, rational allocation of water resources and so on. But, they still cannot solve the serious situation of water shortage. The implementation of “South-to-North Water Transfer” Project is in urgent need.

Paragraph 11

T水供应的目标和实施阶段 Target of Water Supply and Stages of Implementation

Based on various water resources plans, it is decided that the short term target of water supply is to alleviate water shortage mainly for the domestic and industrial use, while taking the needs of agricultural and ecological use into account.

Water saving should be strongly promoted in agricultural water use by increasing irrigation efficiency in the irrigated area and the irrigated area should be expanded properly by using the saved water. At the same time,

original water for agricultural use but taken over for urban and industrial use should be returned to agriculture, to ensure sustainable development of agriculture.

The ecological system will be gradually recovered if the water taken over by urban use can be returned to agriculture use and the over-extraction of groundwater can be controlled.

The guarantee rate required for domestic and industrial water use is relatively high. So the priority of water supply of the Project is paid to domestic and industrial use in normal years. But in wet years, the Project can open the gates along the mains for discharging water to the existing natural river courses for supplementing ecological water and recharging the groundwater aquifer.

Based on the target set for water supply, it is considered that the uncertainty of the increase rate of economy and society may affect the forecast of water demand, and that time is needed for the consumption of newly increased water in the water receiving area. The government at different levels will take time to complete their institutions for water saving and to secure their investments. Besides, what is more important is to generate benefits of the investment as early as possible and to avoid the overstock of investment. Therefore, the advantages and disadvantages of construction in stages were analyzed during the planning, and decision is made to implement the project in stages, and to expand the water transfer amount after the first conveyance.

Paragraph 12

The Benefit from the Project

Considerable social, economic and environmental benefits will be generated by the implementation of "South-to-North Water Transfer".

Based on the current preparation, the project is basically ready for commencement next year in view of its technical conditions. Within 5—10 years of construction, the East and the Middle Routes of the Project will be



in operation and will be of benefit to the people. The major benefits are:

Firstly, the natural environment, especially the water resources conditions in North China will be improved, the bearing capacity of water resources will be strengthened, the allocation efficiency of resources will be enhanced and the strategic restructuring of economy will be accelerated. It is of great importance to enlarge domestic demand, to create new job opportunities, and to sustain high-speed development of national economy. It will help to realize structure upgrading and to realize the sustainable development of society and economy. Secondly, through the improvement of water resources conditions, the potential productive force will be mobilized for economic growth. Through the establishment of the modern operation system of the “South-to-North Water Transfer” Project, the water saving and pollution control activities will be strengthened, thus gradually improve the eco-environmental condition of the Huang-Huai-Hai area. This will gradually make North China transformed into a new type of water saving and pollution-preventive society in which water resources will be rationally allocated, water supply will be guaranteed and water environment will be improved.

Thirdly, it will effectively solve water quality issues caused by natural reasons in some parts of the northern area, for instance, water with high-fluoride content, bitter and salty water or other natural water containing substance harmful to health. Thus the quality of drinking water in rural areas is improved.

Fourthly, the constraint of urbanization in the northern area due to water shortage will be alleviated, The process of local urbanization will be accelerated. The eco-environment and natural landscape will be improved, satisfying the increased requirement of the people with higher and higher living standard.

Paragraph 13

T三条独立的线路 **Three Separate Routes**

The Project is characterized by its long distance and large volume of

water transfer. By comprehensive study for several decades, the general layout of the Project approved by the State authority is as follows: by three separate routes, to transfer water from the upper, middle and lower reaches of Yangtze river respectively.

West-Route Project Transfer water from the Tongtianhe, Yalongjiang and Daduhe rivers in the upper reach of Yangtze into the Yellow River. The Project will be constructed by three stages with an annual average total transfer water volume of $170 \times 10^8 \text{m}^3$, mainly to supply water to 6 provinces (region) of Gansu, Ningxia, Inner Mongolia, Shaanxi and Shanxi in the upper and middle reaches of Yellow River. The water diversion of West-Route Project is mainly conducted by means of self-flowing and tunnel transfer. So, it is necessary to build high dams of 123 ~ 273m and to excavate extra long tunnels of 244 ~ 490km.

Middle-Route Project At first, it is to divert water from the Danjiangkou reservoir on the Hanjiang river, which is a branch of the Yangtze. The annual average transfer water volume will be 9.5 billion m^3 in the first stage, 13 ~ 14 billion m^3 in the following stage. The Project will mainly supply water to 4 provinces (cities) of Beijing, Tianjin, Hebei and Henan, which are situated in the west and central part of the plain of Yellow River, Huai River, Hai river and in the Tangbeihe area. The water transfer can be done by means of self-flowing through the whole route and it is necessary to build the trunk canal of 1 276 km in the above plain area and the main canal of 155 km to divert water to the city of Tianjin. The Project will mainly construct open canals and also use pipelines and culverts in some sections. It is also necessary to heighten the dam of Danjiangkou reservoir in water source area and to build 4 regulating works in the middle and lower reaches of Hanjiang river. In future, it is also possible to transfer water from the mainstream of Yangtze River.

East-Route Project Transfer water by pumping from the lower reach of Yangtze nearby Yangzhou city. The Project will be implemented in 3 stages with an annual average pumping water volume of 8.9 ~ 14.8 billion m^3 . By making use of the Grand Canal from Beijing to Hangzhou and the river



channel parallel with it, the Project will transfer water, by way of step-by-step pumping, to supply water to Jiangsu, Shandong, Hebei provinces and the Tianjin city in the east plain of Yellow river, Huai river and Hai river. In the near future, it will mainly supply water to the north of Jiangsu province and the east of Shandong province. The length of main line for water transfer is 1 156 km, of which 663 km is in the south of Yellow river. It is necessary to build 13 stepped pumping stations with a total lift of 65m. After crossing the Yellow river, the water can be diverted to the city of Tianjin by way of self-flowing.



Cultural Links 文化链接

南水北调工程

南水北调工程不仅仅是为缓解我国北方地区水资源严重短缺的形势,解决中国水危机的调控和配置的战略工程,更为重要的是建立一个中国战略水资源的调控和配置体系和水安全保障体制,是将长江、淮河、黄河和大海四大江河连成全国水网,是世界规模最宏伟的战略资源工程。

我国的水资源状况:我国水资源的自然分布,在时空、地区上极不均衡。南多北少,东多西少,与人口、耕地、矿产等资源分布极不匹配。我国长江及其以南地区集中分布着 81% 的水资源,北方地区人口占全国的 37%,土地占 45%,而平均水资源总量仅占全国的 12%。从人均占有量来看,人均占有淡水资源量南方最高和北方最低可以相差 10 倍。

根据预测,随着人口增长和经济发展,我国北方缺水形势将更加严峻。到 2010 年前后,如遇连续干旱,北方地区尤其是京、津、华北地区,人民生活和发展用水有可能出现硬缺口,几乎无潜力可挖。而滔滔长江每年将一万亿立方米的水送进大海。因此,要从根本上缓解水资源紧缺的状况,南水北调工程势在必行。

南水北调是发展的需要:中国北方地区一旦发生大面积缺水危机,后果是难以设想的,很可能影响国家现代化的进程。因此,南水北调不单纯是一项调水工程,也是今后 20 ~ 30 年内国家全面建设小康社会和基本实现现代化目标的战略性工程,是支撑华北地区以至影响全国可持续发展的重大对策,还可促进西部大开发战略的实施,其深远的历史意义和战略意义

远远超出了工程本身。

 Vocabulary
妙词连珠

freeboard 超水高度	roadway 坝顶公路
scouring sluice 冲沙闸	dam base 坝基
sluice gate 冲刷闸门	raising of dam 坝体加高
ship lock 船闸	strengthening of dam 坝体加固
vertical gate 垂直升降闸门	downstream face 背水面
bulkhead gate 堵水闸门	fascine dam 草坝
tide lock 防潮闸门	bank 堤
emergency gate 防险闸门	embankment 堤防
distribution structure 分水闸	rock-fill dam 堆石坝
flood-diversion sluice 分洪闸	emergency dam 防险坝
polder 圩田	diversion dam 分水坝
lower reaches 下游	diversion weir 分水堰
outlet work 泄水工程	floating dam 浮坝
innings 新增的陆地	arch dam 拱坝
building water conservancy projects 兴修水利	roller weir 辊堰
water course renovation 修整河道工程	overflow dam 滚水坝
flood storage project 蓄洪工程	rolling dam 滚筒式活动坝
diversion work 引水工程	roller dam 滚柱坝
underground dam 暗坝	needle dam 横栅活坝
dam 坝	bank protection 护堤
bottom discharge tunnel 坝底溢洪隧道	concrete gravity dam 混凝土重力式坝
top 坝顶	movable dam 活动坝
	silt-precipitation dam 淤积坝



U 西电东送

Unit 2 West-to-East Power Transmission



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. Once completed, the projects will supply power for the “West-to-East Power Transmission” program, an important component part of China’s “Developing the West” strategy.
工程竣工后,该项目将是电力供应的“西电东送”的计划一个重要组成部分,中国的“西部大开发”战略之一。
2. The program aims to transmit cheap, clean electric power from western China to the economically dynamic and energy-hungry Guangdong province and other eastern coastal areas.
这一计划的目的是将来自西部的廉价、清洁的电力转到经济发达但能源紧缺的广东省及东部沿海地区。
3. It will creat win-win results for both east and west and promoting the sustainable growth of the national economy.
它将创造双赢的结果,促进东西方对国家经济的可持续增长。
4. Under the state plan, Guizhou will play a vital role in the west-to-east power program.
根据国家规划,在西电东送方案中贵州将发挥重要作用。
5. It would increase its power capacity by 8 million kW from 2001—2005, of which 4 million kW would be transmitted to Guangdong province.
它的发电量在2001—2005年之间将增加800万千瓦,其中400万千瓦将提供给广东省。
6. Guizhou was capable of transmitting one million kW of electricity outside the province.
贵州能够向外省传输100万千瓦电力。

7. The power transmission program is said to provide an excellent opportunity for Guizhou to develop its provincial economy.
输电工程为贵州经济发展提供了非常好的机会。
8. By the end of the five-year period (from 2001 to 2005), Guizhou was able to produce 66 million tons of coal each year.
在 5 年期间(2001 至 2005)结束时,贵州年产煤达到 6600 万吨左右。
9. Hydro-electric stations in western China are lighting up homes hundreds of kilometers away as the massive west-to-east electricity transmission project comes online.
西电东送工程使得西部的水电站照亮了几百公里外的千家万户。
10. The project will exploit the abundant hydro-power resources in south-west China's Guizhou, Yunnan and Sichuan provinces and transfer electricity eastward to south, central and north China.
这一项目将水电资源丰富的贵州,云南和四川等地的电力东输到华南、华中和华北。
11. Shanghai, Jiangsu, Zhejiang, Beijing, Tianjin and Tangshan will benefit from the power-transmission project.
上海、江苏、浙江、北京、天津、唐山将从电力传输工程中受益。
12. Moreover, the traditional pattern of transmitting power only in the wet season has been replaced by regular power transmission throughout the year.
此外传输模式由原来的雨季传送转为一年四季都可以传输。
13. Work on the first phase of the Manwan Hydro-electric Power Station, with an installed capacity of 1.25 million kW, has been completed.
第一阶段的工作:漫湾电站,装机容量 12.5 万千瓦,已经完成。
14. Three generating units at the 1.35—million-kW Dachashan power plant have gone into operation.
135 万千瓦大朝山电站的 3 台机组已经投产。



Wonderful Paragraph 精彩片段

Paragraph 1

W 西电东送工程 West-to-East Electricity Transmission Project

The major power generation plants in China are located in western and northern China. But the main power consumption is concentrated in the areas along and east of Beijing-Guangzhou railway. The West-to-East Electricity Transmission Project aims to transmit power from electricity-rich west regions to the economically prosperous eastern areas.

The basic structure of the project is to build three power supply passages, which are the north, central, and south routes.

The north route includes the northeastern, northern, Shangdong, and northwestern power grids. It uses the water energy from northwestern regions to supply electricity to power grids in Beijing, Tianjin, Hebei and Shandong provinces.

The central route includes the eastern China, central China, Sichuan-Chongqing, and Fujian power grids. It is powered by water from Yangtze River to supply electricity to central china, eastern china, and Fujian area. It covers the widest area in the whole West-to-East Electricity Transmission Project and holds special position in the country's power network.

The south route includes Kengkou power grids in Yunnan and Guizhou provinces. It is powered by Wujiang River in Guizhou province, Lancang River and Hongshui River in Yunnan Province and supplies electricity to Guangdong province.

The massive West-to-East Electricity Transmission Project is a key component of the Chinese government's western development project. It combines the resource-rich western area with the huge market in eastern China. The project is expected to accelerate the development of China's power industry and national economy.

B 中国南方电网有限公司简介 Brief Introduction of Southern China Power Grid Co., Ltd (CSG)

CSG is a state-owned super large company founded in December 2002 in compliance with the State Council's power system reform strategy and program. Its service area covers Guangdong, Guangxi, Yunnan, Guizhou and Hainan Provinces. The main functions of the company are: operate and manage power network, ensure safe power supply, develop regional power network, administer regional power market, manage power dispatching and transaction center, and dispatch power based on market rules.

In 2003, the power sales of CSG reached 253.7 TWh, accomplishing 107.2% of the annual estimate, exceeding the previous year by 18.5%. Power transmitted in the "west-to-East" project reached 26.6TWh, accomplishing 102.8% of the annual estimate, exceeding the previous year by 31.5%. Power generated from peak adjusting power plants reached 11.9TWh, accomplishing 101.6% of the annual estimate. Primary business income reached 123.7 billion RMB, accomplishing 106.6% of the annual estimate, exceeding the previous 19.1%; total profit of 2.1 billion RMB; value-keeping /-adding rate of assets reached 101.5%; index of industrial enterprise labor productivity rate reached 1.84 million RMB per annual capita. The fixed-asset investment totaled 30.1 billion RMB, 5 575km of transmission lines capacity. By the end of the year, the total assets of the company valued to 217.2 billion RMB, with a debts/assets ratio of 55.8%.

In 2003, power delivered from "West-to-East" totaled 26.6 TWh, exceeding the previous year by 31.5%, accomplishing 102.5% of the annual estimate.

The rapid economic growth of the five provinces in Southern China leads to the rapid increase of electric power demand. It is expected the five provinces will need 360 TWh and 520 TWh of the electricity by 2005 and 2010 respectively. The sustained rapid growth of the economy offers a broad-



der development space for the company. Equipped with the peculiar regional advantages and the complementary features of local resources, the company has put forward the clear strategic goal to construct CSG into a unified and modern enterprise that focuses on proficient operation and quality service.

Paragraph 3

W西电东送工程的实现 **West-to-East Power Project Pays Off**

Hydro-electric stations in western China are lighting up homes hundreds of kilometers away as the massive west-to-east electricity transmission project comes online.

The project will exploit the abundant hydro-power resources in southwest China's Guizhou, Yunnan and Sichuan provinces and transfer electricity eastward to south, central and north China. Shanghai, Jiangsu, Zhejiang, Beijing, Tianjin and Tangshan will benefit from the power-transmission project.

Yunnan Province, one of the leading power providers in southwest China, transmitted 1.1 billion kWh of electricity to Guangdong Province, an economic powerhouse in south China, in the first seven months of this year.

Moreover, the traditional pattern of transmitting power only in the wet season has been replaced by regular power transmission throughout the year.

An official with the Yunnan Provincial Power Group estimated its annual transmission of electricity to Guangdong Province to be 3 billion kWh this year, which is more than the total amount of electricity Yunnan sent to Guangdong in the past five years.

With six rivers running through the province, Yunnan is a major power source in China with 90 million kW of exploitable installed capacity, ranking second in China. The powerful Lancang River will become an energy depot not only for China, but also for southeast Asian countries. When the eight planned hydro-electric power stations are completed built in the middle and

lower reaches of the river, the fifth longest in the country, they will generate 73 billion kWh of electricity annually.

Construction has started on the 4.2-million-kW Xiaowan Hydro-electric Power Station, the country's second largest after the Three Gorges power station on the Yangtze River.

Work on the first phase of the Manwan Hydro-electric Power Station, with an installed capacity of 1.25 million kW, has been completed. Three generating units at the 1.35—million-kW Dachaoshan power plant have gone into operation.

By the end of 2005, the installed generating capacity of Yunnan soared to 8.51 million kW, more than the anticipated capacity.

The province began to transmit power to Guangdong in 1993. However, the annual power transmission averaged 580 million kWh in the past nine years as a result of irrational structure and poor facilities.

To meet the growing demand for power supply in Guangdong, Yunnan has built an ultrahigh voltage super grid, a 500—kilovolt power converting station and a 500—kilovolt transmission line. It plans to invest 1.8 billion Yuan to build another 500—kilovolt power transmission and converting project in the near future.

Meanwhile, Sichuan will provide 750 million kWh of electricity each to Shanghai and Zhejiang this year, in addition to 4.9 billion kWh to neighboring Chongqing.

Paragraph 4

G 工程中的贵州 Guizhou—in the Project

Guizhou, an economically under-developed province in southwest China, expects to start a series of power generation projects during 2003—2004, for it has invested 9.494 billion Yuan (1.14 billion US dollars) in the projects in the past two years.

Once completed, the projects will supply power for the “West-to-East Power Transmission” program, an important component part of China's



“Developing the West” strategy.

The program aims to transmit cheap, clean electric power from western China to the economically dynamic and energy-hungry Guangdong province and other eastern coastal areas, creating win-win results for both east and west and promoting the sustainable growth of the national economy.

Under the state plan, Guizhou will play a vital role in the West-to-East power program. It would increase its power capacity by 8 million kW from 2001—2005, of which 4 million kW would be transmitted to Guangdong province, said Zhang Tianxiang, in charge of coordinating the program in the province.

Currently, he added, Guizhou was capable of transmitting one million kW of electricity outside the province.

Boasting rich resources for hydroelectric and thermal power generation, Guizhou started building eight power plants including Hongjiadu, Sufengying and Wujiangdu hydroelectric power stations and the second phase of the Anshun Power Plant and Jienbei Thermal Power Plant from November 2000, with a combined installed capacity of 5.38 million kW.

Preparations are well underway for another batch of potential power supply projects in the province, involving a combined installed capacity of 11.4 million kW.

The power transmission program is said to provide an excellent opportunity for Guizhou to develop its provincial economy. Zhao Jiaxing, an economic planner and direction of the provincial development planning commission in Guizhou province, said that the construction of thermal power projects would increase demand for coal in the province and nearby areas for thermal power generation by 35 million tons added annually between 2001 and 2005. By the end of the five-year period (from 2001 to 2005), Guizhou would be able to produce 66 million tons of coal each year.

C中国电力工程顾问集团公司 China Power Engineering Consulting Group Corporation

China Power Engineering Consulting Group Corporation established on the foundation of China Power Engineering. (Group) Company Ltd. affiliates eight solely-owned enterprises and companies and an institution, they are: Northeast, East China, Central-South, Northwest and Southwest power design institutes, Engineering Company Ltd. under Guohua North China Power Design Institute, China Power Construction Consultation Corporation, China Power Engineering Consultation (Group) Company Ltd, and the Power Planning and Design General Institute.

The Group Corporation staffs presently more than 8000 employees, of which, 12 are super-grade great masters of design, 136 enjoy government experts' special subsidies and 4270 are high and medium ranked technicians. With strong technical forces, complete disposition of technical specialties, sound overall management capability and rich experiences, as well as advanced technical equipment and massive information resources, the Group Corporation has setup quality management system according to ISO 9001:2000 standards, and passed authentication registration.

The Group Corporation is an intermediary agency facing both domestic and foreign markets to provide comprehensive services to governments, monetary agencies, investors, developers and project legal persons for power construction, it has achieved the right of economical and technical cooperation with foreign countries approved by the Ministry of Foreign Economic and Trade, and qualified with project assessment consultancy for decision making. Its service scope covers power development planning, survey, design, consultation, managing, contracting and financing for power generation, transmission and substation projects and construction management.

With rich engineering practical experiences, the Group Corporation undertakes plenty power development strategic planning researches for power



market analysis, electric energy consumption, power transmission from west to east, mutual power supplement between north and south, national interconnection, power industry organizational adjustment, etc. Since many years, the Group Corporation has completed about 60% of the nation's total design and survey works for power generation, transmission and substation, undertaken more than 160 projects in more than 10 foreign countries, of which 74 projects have been awarded with national outstanding engineering design prizes and outstanding engineering survey prizes. In 2005, the Group Corporation entered for the first time among the global top 150 enterprises and international top 200 engineering design companies, ranking 104th and 147th respectively appraised by NER.

The Group Corporation occupies leading position technically in the country not only in design of conventional thermal power plant, transmission and substation, but also active in design reform. In 2000, the demonstrative project design and research, clean coal power generation, super-critical power units, gas-steam combined cycle generation, air cooling and conventional island of nuclear power, ultra-high voltage DC transmission etc. carried out by the Group Corporation enjoyed superiority in the country. The Group Corporation has also carried out widespread international exchange and cooperation with many foreign enterprises groups and engineering companies.

Paragraph 6

C西电东送的三条通道 China to Build Three Channels for West-to-East Electricity Transmission

According to the news from the State Electricity Corporation of Mar. 18, 2002 in Beijing, Great efforts are being made to put up three major channels in the south, middle and north of China for the “electricity transmission from west to east”.

The three major channels are disposed like this: the channel in the south starts from the Tianshengqiao Hydraulic Power Station at the junction



of Yunnan, Guizhou and Guangxi, aiming at an strategic target of transmitting 10 million kilowatts of electricity to Guangdong Province. Up to now, three lines for power-transmission have already been connected with the electric network of Guangdong province while the fourth one is under an intensified construction. In addition, the transmission lines from Guizhou to Guangdong and that from Yunnan to Tianshengqiao are to be put up. By doing so, there will be six transmission lines, each of a capacity of 500 kilowatts in among Yunnan, Guizhou, Guangxi and Guangdong provinces and autonomous region to form a trunk power transmission channel in the south.

The channel in the middle: it is targeted at the linkup of the electric network in mid-China and that in Sichuan and Chongqing areas and to put up a power transmission line from the Three Yangtze Gorges to the east of China. The channel in the middle must be made sufficient to transmit electricity from the large hydraulic power stations from the Three Gorges and Xiluodu to the external regions in China.

The channel in the north: it is within the electric network of north China itself. The power-transmission line leading from Inner Mongolia and Shanxi to the network of Beijing, Tianjin and Tangshan will get strengthened. The newly put-up power-transmission lines will lead from Fengzhen of the Inner Mongolia to Shunyi district, from Tuoketuo to Beijing and from Shentou of Shanxi to Tianjin.

Paragraph 7

C向东部供电的巨大输电工程 China's Massive Power Transfer Project Supplies Electricity to Eastern Cities

With the demand growing at 9 percent annually, it has embarked on a massive power project to supply its energy-guzzling cities on the east coast.

Boasting rich resources for hydroelectric and thermal power generation, China's southwestern province of Guizhou is known for its massive power stations which supply millions of kilowatts of electricity to the



country's eastern coastal areas.

Given China's severe imbalance in power generating capacity, the Chinese government started a massive "West-to-East Power Transfer" project in 2000.

Now every year, electricity is sent from big power generating provinces such as Guizhou and Guangxi in the West, to big energy consumers like Guangdong and Shanghai in the East.

The project forms an important part of China's "Developing the West" strategy, which aims to help western provinces like Guizhou develop their impoverished economies.

The surge in power output has fuelled the demand for coal-often putting power plants at the mercy of suppliers.

It sparked an energy crisis last year and even Guizhou's largest power generating companies were not spared.

Bai Jiang, General Manager, Guodian Anshun Generating Co, said, "Anshun Power Plant encountered a severe shortage of coal last year. It was mainly because demand for coal in the neighbouring provinces was also very high. They offered higher prices and many of the suppliers sold the coal to them."

And even with enough coal, its quality would be questionable, as unscrupulous suppliers would often bulk it up with waste rock and rubbish.

Such burning concerns put immense pressure on power plants like Anshun Power, which have to work hard to guarantee a stable supply of electricity to its eastern customers.

Bai Jiang said, "This year, we had no reduction in power supply this year due to shortage of coal. The quantity (of coal) is now adequate and the quality has also improved significantly compared to last year. We've already set aside land and depending on the market conditions, including the coal situation, we may embark on our third phase of expansion."

While power suppliers gear up for growth, China is at the same time urging its big power-consuming cities to curb their thirst for energy by developing energy-saving technologies.



西电东送基本构想

1. 西电东送的3条大通道

我国西部水能资源主要集中在西南的长江干支流(包括金沙江、雅砻江、大渡河、乌江等)、澜沧江和雅鲁藏布江等几条大江大河上,其次分布在赤水河、黄河上游和湘鄂水系。

结合全国电网发展规划,西部水电能源大体上将从北、南、中3条大通道分别东送或引入东部各电网:北路为黄河上游的水电东送至华北电网,形成西北、华北联网;中路为长江上、中游的水电东送至华中、华东电网,形成西南、华中、华东三大区联网;南路为南盘江、红水河干流梯级电站和澜沧江中下游梯级电站东送电力至华南,形成粤、桂、滇、黔四省(区)的南方电网。

2. 中近期工程规划

(1)北路。以开发黄河上游和中游北干流丰富的水能资源为基础,在已建的刘家峡、龙羊峡、八盘峡、青铜峡、盐锅峡、天桥等水电站和在建的李家峡、大峡、万家寨、小浪底等水电站的基础上,在2000年开工建设公伯峡、黑山峡、拉西瓦、碛口等大型水电站,加上青海尼娜、直岗拉卡、甘肃小峡、乌金峡等中型水电站,以及八盘峡和盐锅峡等电站的扩建,预计到2020年总装机容量可达1800万kW。

(2)中路。①在长江葛洲坝和清江隔河岩电站业已竣工的基础上,20世纪末建成清江高坝洲水电站,21世纪初三峡电站全部建成,2010年前水布垭电站相继投入运行,加上丹江口、黄龙滩、潘口电站扩机等,2020年前,预计共可投产水电总容量2437万kW。②金沙江下游设想2000年前后开始建设溪洛渡和向家坝水电站,2010—2015年兴建中游的金安桥、观音岩水电站,预计2020年总装机可达2200万kW。

 Vocabulary
妙词连珠

wave activated power generation 波浪力发电	pump storage power station 抽水蓄能式水电站
magnetohydrodynamic power generation 磁流体发电	dam-type power station 堤坝式发电站
geothermal electrogenerating 地热发电	geothermal power station 地热电站
ocean current generation 海流发电	system thermal power plant 电力系统火力发电站
ocean thermal conversion 海水温差发电	decentralized solar power station 分散型太阳能电站
thermal electrogenerating 火力发电	wind power station 风力发电站
wave-power breakwater 拦浪式发电装置	floating power station 浮动发电站
hydraulic electrogenerating 水力发电	heating and power plant 供热发电站
standby power plant 备用发电站	nuclear power station 核电站
diesel power plant 柴油发电站	thermal power station 火力发电站
tidal power plant 潮汐电站	outdoor thermal power plant 露天火力发电站

U 奥运工程

Unit 3 Olympic Project



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. China's long march to the Olympics is a story of its athletic ability and national strength. It is a story full of pain and joy.
中国进军奥运会是一个漫长的历程。这显示了中国的体育潜力与国家实力,但其中有痛也有乐。
2. When did China first participate in the Games?
中国第一次参与奥运会是什么时候?
3. In 1922, a Chinese diplomat was elected as an IOC member.
1922 年,中国的一位外交官当选了国际奥委会的成员。
4. However, it was not until 1932, at the 10th Olympic Games held in Los Angeles, that China was invited to participate.
但是,直到 1932 年,中国才收到参加洛杉矶第 10 届奥运会的邀请。
5. Chinese athletes failed to win a single medal. Almost all athletes were eliminated in the preliminaries in 1932.
1932 年中国运动员未能赢得奖牌。他们大多在预赛中就被淘汰了。
6. The government had little funding for sports.
那时候,政府在体育上投入的资金太少。
7. China finally emerged as an athletic power in the Olympics.
中国最终成为奥运会上的一个体育强国。
8. After China's seat on the IOC was restored, Chinese athletes went to Los Angeles in 1984 for the 23rd Olympic Games. This was China's first full participation in a Summer Games.



在中国恢复奥林匹克委员会成员国的地位后,1984 年中国运动员出现在洛杉矶举行的第 23 届奥运会上。这是中国第一次正式组团参加奥运会。

9. That's when China picked up her first gold—in 1984.

1984 年,中国第一次摘取了金牌。

10. At the 27th Olympics held in Sydney, China came third in total medals. We were only behind the United States and Russia.

在第 27 届悉尼奥运会上,中国奖牌总数第三,仅次于美国和俄罗斯。

11. Since we are the first Chinese city to host the Olympics, we have been working hard to make preparations.

作为第一个举行奥运会的中国城市,我们一直在努力做好各项准备工作。

12. A broadcasting company has already been chosen to build a center for international coverage.

我们已经选定了一家广播公司负责建造面向世界各国的新闻中心。

13. The city is beefing up public transportation, building light railways, subways, expressways and suburban railways.

现在整个城市都在加强公共交通的建设,修建轻轨铁路、地铁、快速路和郊区铁路线。

14. The water resource and telecommunications in the city will also be improved.

北京的水源和通信也会得到改善。

15. "One World One Dream" fully reflects the essence and the universal values of the Olympic spirit—Unity, Friendship, Progress, Harmony, Participation and Dream.

“同一个世界同一个梦想”的本质充分体现奥林匹克精神的普遍价值观——团结、友谊、进步、和谐、参与和梦想。



Wonderful Paragraph
精彩片段

Paragraph 1

B 邀请合作者投标的基本政策
Basic Thoughts of Invitation Bid
of Corporation Cooperation Party

In China, the big gym establishments are always established by the government, and managed also by the department in charge of the government. Under this system, the gym establishment functions in singleness, and commonly is difficult to make a profit during the evening run, and needs the support of the nation and the local government in its management, even becomes the burden of the governmental finance. But in the developed western countries, they have tried to make use of the social capital to construct and run this kind of project 20 years before, which correspondently reduces the investment burden and running risk of the government.

Therefore, Beijing government puts forward the basic thought of “exploring a new fundraising and financing pattern, and do a good job of marketing financing in current Olympics”, that is, for the new Olympic gyms and the related constructions charged by Beijing government, they would adopt bid for cooperation party to construct, and the successful bidder would be responsible for financing, design, construction and run of the project. This principal has got the affirmation of the State Department and the International Olympic Committee (ICO).

Thoughts in detail: The government organizes, introduces, coordinates and supervises the whole financing work by means law, code, economic policies and other regulation and control pattern. The government also bids the project corporation of both internal and external economic entities for the Olympic gyms by the international Vulgate commercial mechanism. And according to the market principal, the government chooses the excellent



designs, constructing proposals that satisfy the requirements of the 29th Olympics and Disadvantage people Olympics; chooses the capable corporation with financing experiences so to ensure the fully prepared, in-time and economical financing of the project capital; chooses the experienced constructing and managing groups to ensure that the project could be complete, and deliver to use on time with high quality; chooses the available running proposal in order to make the project reach the maximum commercial run after the Olympics in 2008.

This time, adopting the bid for corporation in the Olympics project is the need to follow the market economic requirements and financing system reform, and is an act of the government to follow the international Vulgate routine, and is an attempt for government to proceed the reform of financing system.

Paragraph 2

P邀请投标公司的原则 **Principles of Invitation Bid of Corporation Party**

The project bidding for corporation includes: National Palaestra, National Stadium, National Swimming Center, Wukesong Cultural and Physical Center, Shunyi Olympic Hydro-park, Beijing Village Racing Fields, Meeting Center, Olympic village and the correspondent equipments.

Authorized by Beijing government, Beijing Development and Plan committee is in charge of the bidding work of National Palaestra, National Stadium, National Swimming Center, Meeting Center, Olympic village and the correspondent equipments, and consigned by Haidian government and Shunyi government, in charge of the bidding work of the Wukesong Cultural and Physical Center, Shunyi Olympic Hydro-park, Beijing Village Racing Fields.

National Palaestra is the main Palaestra in the Olympics in 2008. It is about to start working late 2005 according to the requirements of construction time limit, and it is the first project bided in 7 projects bidding for corporation.

National Palaestra is the symbolized building in Beijing Olympic Park, and also the biggest, multi-functional Palaestra with international advanced level. During the Olympics, it will hold 100 000 people, and the temporary seats would be 20 000. It takes on the opening ceremony, the closing ceremony, and the track and field competition.

After the Olympics, National Palaestra will hold 80 000 people; it can take on the special or important matches (such as: World Track and Field Championship, Football Championship of World Cup), each routine matches, and non-competition items.

Due to the particularity of National Palaestra, in order to reduce the financing cost and running cost, and consulting the running pattern of both internal and external similar projects, Beijing government will provide the capital support more than 51% of the total investment by referring to the experiences of both internal and external similar projects. And the government will consign Beijing State-owned Capital Running Ltd. Company to plunging into the project company as the investing representative.

Paragraph 3

A 政府投资的目的 **Aims for Government to Investment**

(1) The government will confirm the concept design of the Palaestra so as to assure that National Palaestra will become the symbolized building in the Olympic Park; (2) The government will rigidly insure the schedule and quality of it and insure its use in the Olympics; (3) The government's investment can reduce the running cost, and make the Palaestra become people's physical place appropriate for the consumption standard of the mass.

As for the investment outside the government, Beijing introduces the running system of marketing mechanism, and adopts the international bidding mode to choose the cooperation party of National Palaestra Project Corporation, signs the running contract with the state-owned company, and establishes the project company together. And besides the government's in-



vestment, the project company is responsible for design of this project, the financing, investment, construction, running and delivery.

Paragraph 4

E 评估与确定投标 Evaluating & Confirming Bids

In the first ten-day of the July of 2003, in Boao of Hainan province, the Board of Review recommend the tenderee 2 candidates for winning bids whose integrated grades is near the top.

In the middle and last ten-day of the July of 2003, the tenderee, representatives of governmental investors, the Beijing Organizing Committee and candidates of winning a bid had a talk and put forward to Beijing City Government for approval, and finally the winning bidder for corporation cooperators of National Stadium Project was confirmed.

On the second of August of 2003, the tenderee issued notice of winning a bid to the successful bidder.

On the 9th of August of 2003, signing ceremony for the primary stadium of Beijing 2008 Olympic Games—National Stadium was held and the combination presented by CITIC Group separately signed 3 contracts and agreements, such as Chartered Rights Agreement, National Stadium Agreement and Cooperative Management Contract, with Beijing Municipal People's Government, BOCGO and Beijing State Property Co. Ltd..

Paragraph 5

M 评估竞标的方法 Methods For Evaluating Bids

The general evaluation methods for the bid and evaluation of a bid of corporation cooperators of National Stadium Project and the system of the evaluation can be divided into 8 factors, such as optimization schemes of structural designs (including investment evaluation), structural designs, financial designs, operations designs, financial analysis, insurance programs, delivery programs and the responses to the relative contracts, and

make the scores based on centesimal system.

The ratio of each factor for evaluation bids is stipulated as following:

(A) optimization schemes of structural designs (including investment evaluation) 10%

(B) structural designs 15%

(C) financial designs 20%

(D) operations designs 25%

(E) financial analysis 5%

(F) insurance programs 5%

(G) delivery programs 5%

(H) the responses to the relative contracts 15%

As to the above-mentioned 8 factors for evaluation of bids, the Bids Evaluation Commission reviewed and scored base on different groups of bid documents put forward by each bidder and then accounted the scores based on the given ratio, collected the scores of 4 groups, which are the final scores of one bidder. After the confirmation of sequence of bidders, if there are the same final scores, and then sort them according to the scores of operation designs, and the higher one will be take the first.

Paragraph 6

2008 年北京奥运会的象征因素 Image Elements of the Beijing 2008 Olympic Games

The Olympic Symbol

The Olympic symbol consists of five interlaced rings of equal dimensions (the Olympic rings), used alone, in one or in five different colours, which are, from left to right, blue, yellow, black, green and red.

The Olympic Emblem

Every emblem of the Olympics tells a story. The Beijing 2008 Olympic Games emblem “Chinese Seal, Dancing Beijing” is filled with Beijing’s hospitality and hopes, and carries the city’s commitment to the world.

The Slogan of the Beijing 2008 Olympic and Paralympic Games

“One World One Dream” fully reflects the essence and the universal



values of the Olympic spirit—Unity, Friendship, Progress, Harmony, Participation and Dream.

The Official Mascots of the Beijing 2008 Olympic Games

Like the Five Olympic Rings from which they draw their color and inspiration, Fuwa will serve as the Official Mascots of Beijing 2008 Olympic Games, carrying a message of friendship and peace—and blessings from China—to children all over the world.

Paragraph 7

B 北京 2008 能源节约方案 **Beijing Builds Energy-saving Projects for 2008**

Beijing has initiated a number of projects using solar energy and recycled water for the 2008 Olympic Games, said an official from the Beijing Olympic Organizing Committee.

A 6 000—square metre solar heating system funded partly by Italy is currently under construction. It will provide hot water for 16 000 athletes and save 2 000 tons of coal a year.

Other projects include a heating and cooling project for a 410 000—square metre building that uses recycled water. It is the largest of its kind in China and is expected to save 6 000 tons of coal a year.

Beijing Olympic village will have a 500—kilowatt solar power station and use motor vehicles that have zero or low emissions. Three hundred low-emission engines have already been installed in Beijing buses.

Paragraph 8

B 推动北京奥运会发展 **Boost Beijing Olympic Development Drive**

Beijing authorities are cranking up an “Olympic greening” campaign by decorating roofs with gardens from next year.

The municipal government will finance the greening of 100 000 square meters of roofs next year, mainly in areas close to the 2008 Olympic facilities, the Capital International Airport and along the second and third arterial

ring roads, said Yang Zhihua, an official with Beijing Municipal Gardening and Forestation Bureau.

“By the end of next year, passengers will see blocks of green when their planes fly over the airport area,” he said at an ongoing training program on roof greening techniques, a four-day event that has drawn more than 200 landscape workers nationwide.

About eight million square meters of grayish roofs in the airport area made an ugly first impression on first-time travellers the Chinese capital, he added.

A satellite survey found 69 million square meters of barren roofs within the Fourth Ring Road that encircles the busiest areas of Beijing. Experts say at least 30 million square meters can be covered with greenery.

Yang's bureau has started short listing roofs that can support gardens.

“We'll select roofs that are highly waterproof and can support at least 150 kilograms per square meter,” he said.

Roofs that fail these standards will be painted more colourfully and flat ones will be sloped to improve water run-off, according to the bureau.

Between 2007 and 2010, the municipal government will allocate 10 million Yuan (1.25 million U. S. dollars) annually to finance the greening of at least 100 000 square meters of roofs a year, said Qiang Jian, vice director of the bureau.

He also called on local businesses, particularly real estate developers, to contribute.

Beijing had 38 877 hectares of public green areas at the end of 2005, or 11 square meters per capita, which the city aims to expand to 15 square meters by 2010.

Paragraph 9

T 体育乒乓球馆建设 Table Tennis Gym Project

Officials from Beijing Municipal Government and State Ministry of Education together with PKU leaders attended the “Break-Earth” Ceremony of



2008 Olympiad Table Tennis Gym on Saturday morning, marking the strengthening of PKU's efforts to contribute to the "Best Olympics Ever".

"It's not only a remarkable event for the nation's sports development, but also an important occasion for our university's infrastructure construction." PKU President Xu Zhihong said at the ceremony.

"We feel that we are closer to the final realization of our centennial dream—the dream of Olympics." President Xu said.

He also extended gratitude to the support and trust of Beijing people and government for having granted the chance for Peking University to hold this historic event. "We are always working on improving our service to the local people and with our leading academic capability in subjects like information technology we will be able to contribute more to the Olympic Games."

Liu Jingmin, Vice mayor of Beijing Municipal Government, spoke high of the Project. "On one hand, it says for the high attention from the central government to universities, on the other, it adds power to PKU's efforts of building itself into a world-class university." The Vice mayor said.

The gym will be settled in the Southeastern area of PKU's Yanyuan Campus, covering 26 900 square meters of construction. It will be equipped with 6 000 fixed seats and 2000 more in temporary need, thus holding some 8 000 audience at most. A comprehensive campus gymnasium can be expected after its competition in August, 2007.

Paragraph 10

奥运会乒乓球体育馆 Olympic Pingpong Gymnasium

With Beijing being selected as the host city for the XXIX Olympic Games, 2008 will witness the debut of the Olympics in China. The Ping-pong matches will be held in Peking University, one of China's most prestigious universities. Therefore, Peking University is undertaking the construction of the PKU Olympic Pingpong Gymnasium, which has received formal approvals from the International Olympic Committee (IOC).

To fully embody the Olympic spirit of participation, Peking University has decided to launch a worldwide fundraising project to construct a world-class Olympic Pingpong Gymnasium.

Abiding by requirements from the IOC, the Gymnasium will cover a construction area of 26 000 m², providing 6 000 permanent seats and 2 000 temporary ones. With all facilities matching the highest international standards, it will require a total investment of about RMB 260 million Yuan (US \$31.7 million). The construction will commence in 2005 and be complete by 2007.

After the Olympic Games, the facility will be adapted for use as the primary gymnasium for PKU. As one of China's first-rate collegiate gyms, it will further improve the caliber of Peking University's reputation.

The minimum sum for each donation is RMB 10 000 yuan, or US \$1,250. The fundraising project has an overall goal of RMB 260 million Yuan, or US \$31.7 million. Large donations are especially welcome and appreciated.

The Peking University Education Foundation (USA) is a California-based non-profit organization. Its mission is to strengthen ties between Peking University (PKU) and North America. Friends abroad can send donations directly to PKUEF (USA).

Paragraph 11

C重庆奥运奶酪工程 **Chongqing Getting the "Olympic Cheese Project"**

News from the Municipal Milk Office said that the National Development and Reform Commission and State Ministry of Finance recently approved to build the first large-scale production base of dry cheese in Chongqing. Sheng Yong, the general manager of the Chongqing Three-High Milk Company, which is the main undertaker of the project, said yesterday that his company had enclosed a land of nearly 7 000 m² and would start setting up this base in October. This project has an investment of 184 million Yuan and will first be in operation during the period of 2008 Olympic

Games in Beijing, so it is named the “Olympic Cheese Project”. After the construction, this base, the largest one at home then, will have the yearly capability to produce 100—thousand-ton dry cheese with a value of 440 million Yuan. Mr. Sheng also said that the market of dry cheese would be in good shape during the Olympic Games for millions of cheese consumers from abroad would swarm to China then. Some personnel from the Municipal Milk Office also confirmed that the consumption of cheese had gradually become a fashion in Japan and South Korea after they had held the Olympic Games and the World Fair in those years.

Paragraph 12

T北京 2008 年奥运工程展望
he project of the Beijing 2008
Olympic Games Image and Look

The project of the Beijing 2008 Olympic Games Image and Look aims at creating unique, complete and consistent visual images for the Beijing 2008 Olympic Games and Paralympic Games through architectural development and integrated application and management of the image elements of the Beijing 2008 Olympic Games and Paralympic Games. The Olympic image elements are basic elements of the project of Beijing 2008 Olympic Games Image and Look, which include the Olympic Symbol, Beijing Olympic Games emblem, its color system, theme slogan, secondary marks, mascots, Olympic Pictograph, core patterns and a set of photographic images. The Olympic Rings and the image elements of the Beijing Olympic Games, whose design has been completed, symbolize the Olympic Spirit and the concepts of this edition of the Olympic Games, and serve as the basis for the creation of the Beijing 2008 Olympic Games Image and Look. They are the carrier to showcase to the world the culture and tradition, as well as the city images and human spirit of China and Beijing. They constitute significant wealth of the Beijing 2008 Olympic Games.



Cultural Links

文化链接

走近“鸟巢”——2008 奥运工程代表作

国家体育场——“鸟巢”，这个被市民形象地冠以“别称”的奥运场馆，早已作为奥运工程的代表作而备受瞩目。

此建筑是由脚手架围成一个椭圆，勾勒出“鸟巢”的形状。长有 340 米，宽近 300 米，可以容纳 9.1 万人。整个鸟巢的钢结构用钢量达到 4.2 万吨，全部要在钢铁厂做成构件，每件重达 50 吨到 200 吨。然后再运到施工现场进行组装。

“鸟巢”的钢结构先刷两层防腐涂料。接下来，鸟巢还需要再刷 4 层防腐涂料。这是国内建筑钢结构加注防腐涂料程序最多的一次。按照工程要求，戴 6 层防腐面具的“鸟巢”可以保持“青春”25 年。作为目前世界最大的单体钢结构工程，“鸟巢”的钢结构涂装面积达到 28.4 万平方米。

据负责防腐涂料工作的叶青先生介绍，全国有 6 个厂家生产“鸟巢”所需的钢制品。据介绍，在原产地，这些钢制品就要刷上底漆和封闭漆，分别为黄色和红色，这是头两道防腐面具。然后，再把所有的钢制品集中到工地，涂上中间漆和氟炭色漆，这是第三道和第四道工序。从第四道开始，涂料的颜色就变成灰色。之后，开始钢结构的上架和组装，依次上“面漆”和“罩面漆”。按照工程进度，六道工序预计在 2007 年的八九月份完成。

“鸟巢”从破土、打桩、优化待建、继续施工到现在，大家看到的“鸟巢”外貌也从平地到大坑，再从平地到“鸟巢”逐渐筑起。

看台和场地中间，还有一道深槽，被用作铺设各类管线之用，工程期间用作施工道路。



Vocabulary

妙词连珠

Olympic games 奥林匹克比赛

Olympic team 奥林匹克队

Olympic champion 奥林匹克冠军

Olympic torch 奥林匹克火炬

Olympic flame 奥林匹克火焰

Olympic qualifying standard

奥林匹克及格赛标准	Olympian 参加奥运会选手
Olympic record 奥林匹克记录	Olympic Winter Games
Olympic Solidarity	冬季奥林匹克运动会
奥林匹克团结工作处	Legal Affairs 法律事务处
Olympic oath 奥林匹克宣誓	Relations with the NOCS
Olympic Games 奥林匹克运动会	各国奥委会关系处
Olympic diploma of merit	International Olympic Committee
奥林匹克运动会奖状	国际奥林匹克委员会
Olympic programme	IOC Session 国际奥委会会议
奥林匹克秩序册	Technical Committee 技术委员会
Olympic cup 奥运会杯	Secretary General 秘书长
Olympic event 奥运会比赛项目	Jury 评判委员会
Olympic city 奥运会城	Internal Management 内部事务处
Olympic relay 奥运会接力赛跑	Olympic Summer Games
Olympic gold medal 奥运会金牌	夏季奥林匹克运动会
Olympic year 奥运会年	Marketing 销售处
Olympic Qualification	Information 新闻处
奥运会前的预选赛	Administrator 行政主任
Olympic schedule 奥运会日程安排	Sports 运动项目处
Olympic trial 奥运会选拔赛	Executive Board 执行委员会
Olympic village 奥运村	Appeal Committee 仲裁委员会
Museum 博物馆处	president 主席
Finance 财务处	Organizing Committee 组织委员会

U 西气东输工程

Unit 4 West-to-East Gas Transfer



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. One of the largest engineering feats that China has undertaken since the Great Wall is the West-to-East Pipeline Project.
自修建长城以来,中国最宏伟的工程之一便是西气东输工程。
2. It is a 4 000 km pipeline that will run from Xinjiang to Shanghai.
输气管道西起新疆,东至上海,全程 4000 公里。
3. PetroChina has huge natural gas reserves in Xinjiang and they hope to distribute natural gas to the rest of China.
中国石油天然气股份有限公司在新疆发现了大量天然气,他们想把这些天然气输送到中国其他地区。
4. Maybe this will help to wean Chinese consumers off coal and cut down on pollution.
这也许能使中国消费者不再使用煤,从而减少污染。
5. Energy experts are currently urging the government to build a national oil and gas strategy. They feel that this type of strategy is important to China's long-term economic security.
能源专家们目前正在要求政府制定国家油气战略,他们认为这种战略对中国长远的经济安全很重要。
6. PetroChina will take a 50% stake in the project. Shell, ExxonMobil, Gazprom and Sinopec are also involved.
中国石油天然气股份有限公司占有 50% 的股份。另外,壳牌石油公司,埃克森美孚石油、俄罗斯天然气股份公司及中国石化也都参与了这一项目。

7. The government is giving preferential treatment to foreign investors investing in oil and gas projects in western China. They will even open more pilot projects in western China to attract foreign investment.

中国对西部石油和天然气项目的外国投资者提供优惠待遇,并且在西部将开放更多试点项目来吸引外资。

8. Previously the Chinese party had to own the dominant share, but now they are allowing foreign investors to do so.

以前必须由中方控股,但现在允许外商控股。

9. It sounds as though both the foreign and Chinese parties will reap reasonable returns from this type of cooperation.

中外双方都将从这种合作方式中获得合理的回报。

10. I think the Chinese people will benefit as well, as this is an aid to their economic development.

我认为中国的广大民众也将获益,因为这有助于他们的经济发展。

11. In several days the natural gas has successfully passed the Taklamakan Desert, the Gobi desert, the 800—li depopulated region and the Hexi Corridor.

几天之内西气东输工程已顺利通过塔克拉玛干沙漠、戈壁沙漠、八百里农场及河西走廊地区。

12. The west-to-east natural gas transfer project started in July 2002.

西气东输工程自2002年7月开始。

13. With Shaanxi Jingbian as the linking point it is divided into the west line and the east line.

以陕西靖边为连接点,分为西线和东线。

14. The east line has been put to commercial operation.

东线已投入商业运营。



Wonderful Paragraph 精彩片段

Paragraph 1

W 西气东输工程 West-to-East Gas Pipeline Project

The West to East Gas Pipeline Project is one of the landmark engineering projects of China's implementation of the West China Development, and also the pipeline project with the longest distance, the heaviest caliber and the highest steel quality in the pipeline history of China. The pipeline has a total of about 4 000 kilometers, from the Tarim Oilfield in Xinjiang in the west to Shanghai in the east, passing through Gansu, Ningxia, Shaanxi, Shanxi, Henan, Anhui, and Jiangsu. According to plan, the Shaanxi-Shanghai section will be put into operation for natural gas supply in October 1, 2003; and the end of 2004 will complete the whole project.

The entire pipeline will be divided into 27 construction bid sections, pipeline engineering designed pressure being 10MPa, pipe diameter 1 016mm. The whole pipeline adopts X70 material quality, with the grade one area using corkscrew pipes, while the grade two to four, using transversal joint submerged-arc welded pipe. The pipeline crosses 1 time the Yangtze River, 3 times the Yellow River, 1 time the Huai River, and 8 times other big rivers, with 21 land-based tunnels. The entire pipeline shall set up a total of 34 technique stations and 138 pipeline block valve rooms. Communication system mainly adopts satellite communication, and silicon pipeline shall be laid in the same ditch along with the entire pipeline.

Paragraph 2

G 贯穿中国 4000 公里的输气管道 Gas Pipeline Runs over 4 000 km Across China

If the Great Wall that runs from east to west, winding up high mountains and lofty hills and the plateau desert is said to resemble a flying



dragon, then, the west-to-east gas pipeline, that leads from west to east, runs through deserts, crosses Taihang Mountains and gets across the Yellow and Yangtze rivers, meandering 8 000 li (4 000 km) and brings benefits to hundreds of millions of people, is a magic hidden dragon.

This 4 000 km-long main energy artery that runs through the heartland of China starts west from Lunnan of the Mongolian Autonomous Prefecture of Beyinguoleng in Xinjiang, via Gansu and Ningxia into Shaanxi and, in Jingbian of Shaanxi, connects with the Changqing Gas-field and then gets across the Yellow River through Shanxi, Henan, Anhui, Jiangsu and Zhejiang provinces to reach Shanghai in the east, pipelining the rich reserves of natural gas in the Tarim Basin unceasingly to China's economically most developed southeast coastal regions.

The west-to-east gas pipelining project is the largest scheme started up in the beginning of the new century in China: investment of 27.3 billion Yuan has been made for the prospecting and development of the upstream gas-field and 43.5 billion Yuan for pipeline construction, investment of 68.8 billion Yuan has been channeled to the downstream gas-using project as well as to the construction of urban pipe network, the scale of investment is in no way inferior to that of the Three Gorges Project, it will play a tremendous role in boosting the development of the western region. For this reason, after the Party Central Committee and the State Council formally announced the start of the west-to-east gas-pipelining project in March 2000, Premier Zhu Rongji called it as "the curtain has been raised for the large-scale development of the western region". More than two years have passed, after the overture has been sounded, what magnificent drama will be staged?

Paragraph 3

A 一个东西部双赢的选择 Best "Win-Win" Choice for the East and West

People compare the west-to-east gas pipelining project to a golden bridge featuring "win-win" for the east and west, erected between the

western region with superior resources and the vast market of the eastern region. Indeed, the west-to-east gas pipelining project converts the resources advantage of the western region into real economic benefits, the western region is the greatest beneficiary.

Input into the development of Xinjiang's gas-fields can bring Xinjiang an additional financial revenue of over 1 billion Yuan, the areas along the western region outside Xinjiang will also receive no small benefits. The 4 000 km-long west-to-east gas pipelining project involves an investment of 43.5 billion Yuan, 67 percent of which will be used in the construction of the western region.

So, this project playing a major stimulating role is regarded as a very rare opportunity by the western region and an indicative project marking the large-scale development of the western region.

The destination of this project is the richest Yangtze River Delta. The eastern region is poor in resources. This region relies on 85 percent of resources transferred in from other regions. A survey shows that in the coming decade the demand for natural gas here will increase from this year's over 2 billion cubic meters to over 20 billion cubic meters by a colossal 10 fold by the year 2010! This represents a vast market space for the development of China's natural gas industry.

After this project is put into use, a planned annual volume of over 2 billion cubic meters will be carried down along the line to supply the Yangtze Delta for its 10 billion cubic meter plan, this 12 billion cubic meters of natural gas mean a substitute of 9-million-ton standard coal and the reduction in the discharge of 270 000 tons of smoke dust.

For this, Minister of the State Development Planning Commission Zeng Peiyan points out this is a project of important strategic significance. It will bring benefits not only to various ethnic groups of Xinjiang, and to people in various provinces, autonomous regions and municipalities along the line, but will also help improve China's energy composition and reduce atmospheric pollution, so it is a most realistic choice for China's sustainable development.



Paragraph 4

K控制能源市场 **Keep the Resources Market under Control**

Unless one has been to Xinjiang, one will not know the size of China. Xinjiang covers one/fifth area of the vast expanse of China, an area abounds in natural gas resources. The Tarim Basin lying between Tianshan and Kunlun Mountains has a volume of natural gas resources reaching 8 390 billion cubic meters, representing 28 percent of the country's terrestrial natural gas resources volume. The “main force” of this project is the Tarim Basin.

If the key to the success or failure of the project is resource, then, the core is the market. When the feasibility studies report was made two years ago, what was most questioned was the market question, nowadays, this biggest question mark has been straightened out. Currently, the China National Petroleum Corporation has signed a letter of intent on buying and selling as well as on pipelining with 45 gas-using enterprises in four provinces—Henan, Anhui, Zhejiang and Jiangsu and one municipality of Shanghai. The planned volume of gas use is 12 billion cubic meters in 2005 and 16.6 billion cubic meters in 2007. General Manager Huang Weihe with the West-to-East Gas Pipelining Sub-branch of China National Petroleum and Natural Gas Co. Ltd. disclosed to us, it has been planned that after the conclusion of the first-phased project, 10 compressor stations will be added to the second-phased project, so as to enlarge the transfer volume and finally realize the annual transfer volume of 18 billion cubic meters.

Paragraph 5

G天然气管道工程通过环境评估 **Gas Pipeline Project Passes Environmental Appraisal**

The giant project pumping natural gas from China's energy-rich West to energy-thirsty East passed environmental appraisal organized by the State Environmental Protection Administration (SEPA) Friday.

According to the appraisal team, all environmental protection targets have effectively been completed during the construction and operation of the project, which has reached the environmental protection requirements of both the state and local governments.

The 4 000 kilometer-long pipeline runs through different geographical conditions including desert, grassland, farmland and rivers, passes regions with state-listed nature preserves or cultural relics and traverses the ancient Great Wall 12 times.

Nearly 3.6 percent of the total construction cost was used in environmental protection, said a senior manager of the project.

To protect natural environment at the Wild Bactrian Camels Nature Preserve in northwest China's Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region, project builders moved the gas pipeline northward, extending the total length by 15 km which cost an additional investment of 200 million Yuan (US \$ 24.7 million).

By adopting advanced technologies, the pipeline traverses the ancient Great Wall without bringing any bad effects to this rare historical sites.

By refitting the current rural roads instead of building new ones, the project has not only improved local transportation conditions but also reduced bad effects on local environment and sites of historical interests.

The pipeline, built by the China National Petroleum Company Ltd, runs through nine provinces and one municipality from West to East China.

Put into commercial operation at the end of 2004, the project is considered to be able to increase the proportion of natural gas in China's total energy consumption from 2.2 percent to over 3 percent.

Paragraph 6

T使(利)用新资源 Tapping New Sources

To secure a gas supply to the highly energy-dependent capital city, Beijing has made strenuous efforts to lock in new sources of natural gas to fuel the fast-expanding economy, which felt the pinch from gas shortages



last winter when demand peaked.

Liu Yinchun, an official from the Beijing Municipal Development and Reform Commission in charge of infrastructure construction, earlier last month said the capital city will boast three gas sources by 2010.

Construction of the second Shaanxi-Beijing gas pipeline is expected to wrap up by the end of July and with the first Shaanxi-Beijing line, with an annual gas supply capacity of 3.3 billion cubic metres, the two lines will transport at least 15 billion cubic metres of gas from fields in Shaanxi Province to the northern part, centring on Beijing.

The country's top policy planner, the National Development and Reform Commission (NDRC), has also given permission to PetroChina to build a liquefied natural gas (LNG) terminal in the Caofeidian port of Tangshan in Hebei Province to import natural gas on soaring demand in the Beijing-Tianjin-Hebei region, Su Shulin, senior vice-president of the nation's largest oil and gas producer, said.

The project, designed to handle 3 million tons of LNG in the first phase, is scheduled to start construction within the year and begin operations by 2010 at the latest, sources close to the project said.

In addition, the under-construction Jining linkage line will secure a further source for gas supply to the robust regional economy in northern areas. Industry experts said it is a strategic and far-sighted point of view for China to diversify energy supplies for long-term economic security.

"It is a wise way for a city to rely on both in-land gas pipelines and LNG imports for its gas supplies," said Zhang Kang, a senior analyst with a research institute under Sinopec, Asia's largest oil refiner and China's second-largest oil & gas producer after PetroChina.

Paragraph 7

A 大量新商机 **Wealth of New Business Opportunities**

Economists watching the west-to-east gas pipeline project point out that the construction of this long distance, large-caliber pipeline will do



more that enhance the energy base of East China. Along its route it will impact on the potential development of such industries as iron and steel and cement manufacture. There will be knock on benefits to the mechanical and electronic engineering sectors in the provinces it passes through.

The pipeline will straddle 10 provinces and autonomous regions. It may be expected to require 37 million cubic meters of earthworks. It will consume 1.7 million tons of steel and massive material resources in cement, timber, compressors, instrumentation, automated valves etc.

46 billion Yuan (US \$ 5.6 billion) will be invested in the trunk lines of the pipeline project. Besides this, there will be an input of another 100 billion Yuan (about US \$ 12 billion) necessary to tap the oil fields at source and to lay down subsidiary pipeline networks in the cities along the corridor. Such expenditures make this a very major investment indeed. The Western provinces expect to benefit from about 34 billion Yuan (about US \$ 4 billion) of this and have high hopes for the creation of new jobs against a background of stimulation of market forces.

On completion of the pipeline project, Tarim basin gas can be expected to generate 570 thousand tons of light hydrocarbons and 910 thousand tons of liquefied methane gas. Now the relevant government departments and enterprises in the field are drafting blueprints for the use of these quality raw materials to support large-scale ethane production. They wish to seize the opportunity to expand the chemical industry as a "locomotive industry" driving general economic development further forward.

Experts hold that west-to-east gas transfer will accelerate the restructuring of the industrial base in the Yangtze River Delta area. When the volume of gas exported to East China reaches 20 billion cubic meters a year, it will have become equivalent to a supply of some 20 million tons of crude oil or 27 million tons of coal. If this gas could all be applied to the production of chemical fertilizer or electricity energy, it could be made into 15 million tons of synthetic ammonia or generate 100 billion kW of electrical energy.

Gas flowing to the domestic fuel market in East China will in turn stimulate development in the local manufacturing, installation and construction



sectors. In Shanghai, Jiangsu province and Zhejiang province alone, there are 17 million households in need of natural gas. In ten years, this number will reach 34 million, signaling a potential market value of 60 billion Yuan in the mechanic and civil engineering sectors. Moreover, suppliers of domestic appliances using the energy-saving and environment-friendly natural gas will also enjoy an unprecedented boom in production and sales.

Paragraph 8

R西气东输的美好前景 **Rosy Future for West-to-East Pipeline**

Four years ago, the gigantic west-to-east gas pipeline project was overwhelmed with doubts over whether there was enough demand for gas.

Now, the project, which delivers gas from the deserts of western China's Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region to East China's Shanghai through a 4 000—kilometre pipeline, has become a hot issue in the market.

As oil and coal prices continued to surge over the past three years, gas demand quickly rose to the same level as the project's designated production capacity.

Three years ago, PetroChina, the operator of the project, was saddled with the problem of how to find more customers.

Now, the company is happy to find itself with the opposite "problem" of how to increase its production capacity to meet robust demand.

It seems to be a happy ending for everyone involved.

Customers, including chemical plants, power firms, gas distributors and residents, get clean and efficient natural gas; the better-than-expected gas demand helps the project make a profit this year, far ahead of PetroChina's schedule. For the government, the project contributes to its western development strategy. It also fulfills the government's plan to increase natural gas consumption to reduce heavy reliance on oil imports and help protect the environment.

But analysts warn that the champagne corks should not start popping

yet, as daunting challenges lie ahead, analysts said.

Above all, it remains questionable whether customers would observe long-term gas purchase contracts once the prices of alternative energy fall, analysts said.

In particular, power plants, which account for one-third of the total gas consumption of the project, have not yet received prime-pumps to support them to replace the cheap coal with the natural gas for fuel.

Prices of natural gas are twice as much expensive as that of coal. Without incentives, such as favourable electricity tariffs, power plants may have to face fat losses, analysts said.

Paragraph 9

T工程的挑战 **he Projects' Challenges**

For one thing, the power plants, which account for one-third of the total consumption of the project, have not secured long-term power purchase agreements (PPAs).

While the power plants have to commit to a certain amount of gas consumption, they could not lock the electricity sales.

Without PPAs, the power plants may find it difficult to sell the electricity to grids as the government is encouraging generating firms to compete to sell the electricity, analysts said.

Typically, the price of natural gas is as much as double coal prices for power generation.

As the result, the gas-fired power plants may suffer from high costs in the competition, if the government does not grant favourable policies.

“Certainly, the government would give incentives for power plants. But the problem is when and how,” said an industry observer who refused to be identified.

“Now the risks are all on the side of the power plants.”

The analyst said the ideal PPA should guarantee the amount of power generation, and ensure the proportion of power generation during peak



and low consumption period.

The price of electricity in peak consumption period is much higher than in the low consumption period.

The electricity prices should also be allowed to float in line with the gas price changes, the analyst added.

Paragraph 10

G西气东输缓解燃料的需求 as Pipeline Quenches Fuel Thirst

A 4 000 kilometer-plus natural gas project linking Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region and Shanghai began commercial operations on Thursday. It will help quench demand for clean fuel in the energy-thirsty Yangtze River Delta.

The pipeline will supply gas to Henan, Anhui, Jiangsu and Zhejiang provinces as well as Shanghai.

“PetroChina has already signed an agreement with 40 users so far. The project will break even this year and is expected to make a profit next year,” reported Xinhua news agency, citing Su Shulin, vice general manager of China National Petroleum Corp, the parent company of PetroChina.

PetroChina, the country's biggest oil firm, is the main sponsor of the project, which has a designed annual transmission capacity of 12 billion cubic meters.

PetroChina will endeavor to boost the project's annual capacity to 18 billion cubic meters in 2006 by setting up 10 gas-compressing stations along the line.

Industrialists are hoping to recover their investment and start to reap profits next year, although not all experts agree that this is likely.

Currently, natural gas accounts for less than 3 percent of the country's total energy consumption, according to Xinhua.

But there is a growing appetite for clean fuel, and demand for natural gas is expected to reach 100 billion cubic meters in 2010. This figure is forecast to double by 2020.

The same day, President Hu Jintao sent a message to a ceremony in Beijing marking the pipeline's completion.

He expressed gratitude to the construction workers, on behalf of the CPC Central Committee and the State Council.

“The completion of the cross-provinces gas project symbolizes, once again, that China's socialist system boasts the advantage of being able to concentrate resources in carrying out big projects,” he said.



西气东输

“西气”主要是指我国新疆、青海、川渝和鄂尔多斯四大气区生产的天然气；“东输”主要是指将上述地区的天然气输往长江三角洲地区，同时也包括输往西宁、兰州、北京、天津和湖南、湖北地区。

“西气东输”有广义和狭义两个概念。从广义上讲，我国中西部地区有六大含油气盆地，包括塔里木、准噶尔、吐哈、柴达木、鄂尔多斯和四川盆地。预测天然气资源量为 22.4 万亿立方米，占全国天然气资源总量 38 万亿立方米的 58.9%。根据天然气的资源状况和目前的勘探形势，国家决定启动西气东输工程，加快建设天然气管道，除了建成的陕京天然气管线，还要再建设 3 条天然气管线，即塔里木-上海、青海涩北-西宁-甘肃兰州、重庆忠县-湖北武汉的天然气管道，以尽快把资源优势变成经济优势，满足东部地区对天然气的迫切需要。从更大的范围看，正在规划中的引进俄罗斯西西伯利亚的天然气管道将与现在的西气东输大动脉相连接，还有引进俄罗斯东西伯利亚地区的天然气管道也正在规划，这两条管道也属“西气东输”之列。从狭义上讲，西气东输又是特指新疆塔里木-上海长江三角洲的输气工程。这条管道全长 4 200 千米，管径 1 118 毫米，途径新疆、甘肃、宁夏、陕西、山西、河南、安徽、江苏、上海 9 个省区，年输气能力 120 亿立方米，固定资产投资 384 亿元。再加上城市管网、工业利用等相关项目建设，整个工程的投资规模高达 1 200 亿元。



Vocabulary

妙词连珠

gas meter 煤气表	pipe rack 管架
gas cooling 煤气冷却	pipelining 管路设备
gas compressor 煤气压缩机	loading line 灌油管线
liquefaction 煤气液化	pipe-laying machine 铺管机
desulfurization 脱硫	pulling machine 起油管机
scrubber 洗涤器	pipe-cutting machine 切管机
scrubbing oil tank 洗涤油槽	pipe-cleaning machine 清管机
reheater 再热器	oil pumping system 石油泵送系统
final cooler 最终冷却器	oil storage barge 石油驳船
petroleum reserve 石油储藏量	oil heating and booster station 石油加热、加压站
petroleum accumulation 石油储集	oil jetty 石油码头
source rock of petroleum 石油的母岩	oil equipment 石油设备
natural gas 天然气	oil pipe 辅油管
natural gas deposit 天然气矿床	pipeline for transportation of oil 输油管道
petroleum deposit 油藏	underwater pipeline 水下管路
oil pool 油床	tank car 铁路油槽车
cap rock 油田的覆盖岩	boom-cat 悬臂铺管机
low pressure line 低压管道	oil hold 油舱
oil feeder 滴油器	oil-tanker 油槽船
anticorrosive coating 防腐涂料	oil-line plugging 油管堵塞
anticorrosive paint 防腐油漆	oil branch pipeline 油管支线
pipeline pumping station 管道泵站	tank truck 油罐汽车
pipe laying 管道铺设	

Unit 5 The Three Gorges Project

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. The power station there has begun to generate power.
那儿的水电站今年已经开始发电了。
2. There is a lot of local and international scrutiny concerning that project.
对于这个项目,中国国内和国际上都非常关注。
3. But the government has promised to do whatever it takes to improve the living standards of residents and boost the economy in the area.
政府方面已经做出承诺,要采取一切措施来提高当地的生活水平、促进当地的经济发展。
4. And apparently the relocation of the local residents was completed on schedule. But I'm sure there are still a lot of problems to deal with.
显然,当地居民已经按预定计划进行搬迁了,但是仍然还有很多困难。
5. The dam can provide electricity and the reservoirs will be important for flood control.
这个大坝已经可以发电了,水库也将在防洪方面发挥重要作用。
6. The project should provide a way for ocean-going freighters to reach China's interior.
这项工程还可以使远洋货轮进入中国内地。
7. But there are also a lot of negative impacts.
不过也有很多负面影响。



8. The government has had to provide development-oriented resettlement for the local residents. They've also had to consider the environmental impact.

为了进行开发,政府必须重新安置当地居民,同时还要考虑对环境的影响。

9. Now, they set up artificial breeding fields for wildlife that will be threatened by the project.

目前,他们为那些因这项工程而受到威胁的野生动物修建人工繁殖场。

10. The government is well aware of the problems and challenges of the project.

政府对这个项目中存在的问题和挑战有充分认识。

11. Environmentalists aren't the only ones watching the project. Historians and archeologists are also concerned about the loss of many important sites.

密切关注这项工程的不只是环保人士,历史学家和考古学家们也在为失去许多重要的遗址而担忧。

12. Priceless clues to the lives of the ancient Ba culture will be lost forever.

研究古代巴文化的珍贵线索将永远消失。

13. But efforts are being made to protect the environment in the area.

人们正在为保护当地环境做出各种努力。

14. Even though there is still a huge international debate on the issue, the project will begin benefiting residents soon.

虽然这个问题在国际上引发了很大的争议,但这项工程很快将让当地人受益了。



B 简介 Brief Introduction

China Yangtze Three Gorges Project (TGP), as one of the biggest hydropower-complex project in the world, ranks as the key project for improvement and development of Yangtze River. The dam is located in the areas of Xilingxia gorge, one of the three gorges of the river, which will control a drainage area of 1 million km^2 , with an average annual runoff of 451 billion m^3 . The open valley at the dam site, with hard and complete granite as the bedrock, has provided the favorable topographical and geological conditions for dam construction.

The Yangtze Three Gorges Project (TGP) is the largest hydropower-complex project ever built in the world. On April 3rd 1992, “the Resolution to Construct the Three Gorges Project on the Yangtze” was approved at the 5th plenary session of the 7th National People’s Congress. In 1993, the preparation for the construction commenced, and on December 14th 1994, the project construction formally started. On November 8th 1997, the River Closure was completed, marking the successful fulfillment of the Phase I construction task. In 1998, the Phase II construction of the TGP started in full swing. After 6 years of arduous work, on June 1st 2003, the reservoir of the TGP started to store water, and on June 16th, the double-lane five-step shiplock of the TGP was put into service, and on July 10th 2003, the first unit with 700 MW capacity was connected to the grid and began to generate electricity. So far the goals of the phase II construction have been fully achieved. The TGP, which was drawn the world’s attention, began to return favor to the society with its comprehensive benefits.

With the genial care and strong support from the CPC Central Committee, State Council and the people of the whole nation, all the TGP construc-



tors bearing the lofty ideal of “Committed to Build TGP for China ” honored the mission with 10 years continuous joint efforts and now the dream of the whole China has come true. At the time of realization of the three major goals for Phase II construction, the compiling of this album aimed at introducing the layout of the TGP construction, recording the history of the TGP construction in the past ten years, and showing the main achievement of Phase I & II construction.

As a significant infrastructure for the nation to build a well-off society in an all-round way, the TGP is grand and vigorous, complicated in technology and profound in meaning which can not be fully demonstrated only by about a hundred pictures or so. At present, the TGP is still under construction and all the TGP constructors are striving for the successful realization of the goals set in Phase III construction.

Paragraph 2

B工程的成效 **Benefit of the Project**

First Target of Three Gorges Project is Flood Control.

The project can effectively adjust the upstream flood of Yangtze River, which will assure a flood control standard of the Jingjiang section, a downstream reach to Three Gorges of Yangtze River, arise from currently preventing 10—year flood to controlling 100—year flood. Even in case of a rare occurrence of 1000—year flood, mass damages or injuries can still be prevented. At the same time, social problems such as environmental deterioration and epidemics related to the flood or flood diversion can also be avoided. Thus the project will protect 1.5 million hectare of farmland and towns, and 15 million of people from flood damage at Jiangnan Plain and Dongting Lake area. And also the project will raise the reliability of flood control in the mid and lower reach of Yangtze River, relieve the sand silt of Dongting Lake and create favorable conditions for dredge of the lake, and prevention and cure of the schistosomiasis epidemics in the lake area.

Three Gorges Power Plant will Provide Clean Energy.

Compared to the coal-fired power stations with equivalent electricity generation, Three Gorges Power Plant will decrease emission of 100 million tons of CO_2 , 2 million tons of SO_2 , 0.37 million tons of nitrogen oxide and a lot of waste water and solid waste. It will bring a great benign influence in improvement of environment, especially preventing acid rain and greenhouse effect in East and Central China.

Other Benefit of Three Gorges Project

The Three Gorges reservoir, after the project is completed, will improve the weather in this area, be favorable for agriculture, and improve water quality in the mid and lower reach, which will relieve the invasion of saline tide in the river's mouth.

Paragraph 3

三峡大坝最大指数 Its Buildings with Biggest Indices

Dam

The TGP dam is a concrete gravity one, made of 14.86 million m^3 concrete, the biggest amount in the world. The maximum flood discharge capacity of the dam is 116 110 m^3/s , biggest in the world.

Power Plant

The TGHP is of dam toe power house. The installed capacity of a unit and annual power generation of the TGHP are the biggest respectively. The transmission lines of two ± 500 kV DC circuits and eleven 500 kV AC circuits are the biggest scale in the world.

Three Gorges ship lock

The following indices are the biggest in the world: total water head of 113 m, inland river ship lock of five stages, a lock chamber's effective dimension of 280 m $\times$ 34 m $\times$ 5 m (length $\times$ width $\times$ minimum water depth on the sill), inland river ship lock with capacity to accommodate 10 000—tonnage fleets, maximum operating water head 49.5 m for a gate of its water exchange system, maximum water fill/discharge amount of 260 000 m^3 , maximum side slope excavation of 170 m, in height and etc. The oper-



ating water head exceeds the world record.

Ship lift

Single-way and one-step vertical ship lift with counterweight is employed in TGP complex, consisting of upstream and downstream approach channels, upper and lower lock heads and ship chamber section with a total length of about 6 000 m. The ship lock will allow a maximum 3 000—tonnage ship passing through. The ship chamber has outline dimensions of 132 m (L) × 23.4 m (W) × 10 m (H) and effective water area in it is 120 m (L) × 18 m (W) × 3.5 m (D). The maximum lifting height is 113 m and total lifting weight about 12 800 tons.

Compared with the ship lifts home and abroad that are built or under construction, TGP's ship lift ranks the first in the world in terms of the main technical parameters. Due to the large scale of construction, complicated operating conditions and high requirements in safety and reliability, TGP's ship lift also ranks the first among the world's ones built or under construction in terms of design, manufacture and difficult extent in construction.

Paragraph 4

M 金属用量的最大指数 Metal Works with Biggest Indices

The TGP metal works include 386 gates of various kinds, 139 hoists of various kinds, 26 penstocks, all of which add up to about 256 500 tons. The overall work quantity ranks the top among the world's hydraulic projects built or under construction.

The following indices are also the biggest in the world: the penstock's inner diameter of 12.4 m, the maximum height of ship lock miter gate of 38.25 m, and operating water head of 36.25 m, single gate's weight of 850 tons.

A 成就 Achievement

Since the TGP was launched a decade ago, a few world records in hydropower construction were created, and a series of technology breakthrough were achieved, thanks to the continuous practice in science & technology renovation. They are outlined as follows:

River Close-off and Cofferdam in Deep Water

TGP river close-off was conducted on the main channel and the diversion channel, the difficulty is hardly seen in other water conservancy projects. The successful river close-offs on 11 November 1997 and 6 November 2002 mark that China's river close-off technology ranks among the top ones in the world.

Concrete Placement on the TGP Dam

High Slopes outside the Three Gorges Ship lock and Metal Structures.

The double-way and five-step ship lock is characterized by the biggest water head, the most successive steps, the deepest excavation and the highest concreted side slope, and the highest and heaviest miter gate in the world.

The Design, Manufacture and Installation of the Generator Units

The TGP generator units have the features of large quantity, big capacity, big water head change. Due to their extremely important role in the power grid system, CTGPC has to ensure stability and efficiency of the turbines under high water head, and meanwhile, to take into account the operation performance under low water head. The installed capacity of one TGP unit is 700 MW, biggest in the world. Since the rated water head of TGP units is relatively low, the generators are designed to have maximum capacity of 840 M. VA. Therefore, the overall indices of TGP units set new world records.



P对珍稀物种的保护 **rotection of Valuable and Rare Species**

Protection of Rare Species

There are forty seven kinds of precious botanic species that are near extinction and among the national-level protecting list in area of Three Gorges reservoir, but most of them grow in the area higher than 300—1200 m, which will not be influenced by the project. Also there are little virgin vegetation to be submerged.

Twenty six rare wild animals which are among the first and second classes of national list of protecting animals, but most of them lives in high mountain areas, and will not influenced by the submerge. Now the state has established a lot of natural zones to protect the wild animals and botanic species of this area.

Three Gorges dam will bring some influence on the traveling route and living locations of *Acipenser Sinensis* (*Zhonghuaxun*, a kind of large and rare fish). As early as Gezhouba dam was built, its traveling route in Yangtze River was cut by the dam. From then on, artificial breeding of the fish has been tested and succeeded, so some 100 thousands of baby fishes were poured into the river every year. And also some new spawning areas were found in downstream to Gezhouba. All these mean that the protection of *Acipenser Sinensis* goes well.

Protection of Water Quality

The reservoir has a mixed influence on the water quality of Yangtze River. Due to its adjustment, the flow in drought period will increase, which will improve the water quality and relieve the invasion of saline tide in the river's mouth to East China Sea. On the other side, the sewage discharged into the River is more than 1.35 billion tons per year nowadays, which forms a heavy pollution of the water. With the rise of water level, the flow will slow down, which is unfavorable to the pollution. Therefore, the state has increased investment to control the pollution in this area.

According to the Gazette of Ecological and Environmental Monitoring published by the State Environmental Protection Administration of China in 2002, the water quality of the Yangtze in TGP area still kept not bad in 2002, most better than or at class III, though industrial wastes directly emitted to the River Yangtze increased by 23.8% than in 2001, the environmental quality of the project areas kept good. Environmental monitoring in 2003 indicates that overall management of water quality in TGP area has obtained made initial achievement, with a decrease ratio at class IV and increase at class II and III compared to the period before impoundment.

Paragraph 7

H 工程的历史 History of the Project

In 1918, Mr. Sun Yat-Sen suggested, in his book Strategy for State, Part II: Industrial Plans, a scheme to “improve the upstream from here”, that is, “a dam should be set here to let ships go downstream and use the water resource as power.”

In May 1945, Dr. John Lucian Savage, a famous American expert in dam construction arrived in Three Gorges and put forward his Preliminary Report on Development Plans of Three Gorges.

In Feb 1982, Qian Zhengying communicated the instructions from the central government that TGP be listed in the recent national plan. And on 24, Nov, Deng Xiaoping, the former leader of China talked of the future Three Gorges Project in a meeting that “I myself prefer to the lower dam scheme. Be determined once be assured, do not hesitate”.

On 3 January 1993, the State Council TGP Construction Committee was founded, which would include an executive office, a migrant relocation development bureau and the future China Yangtze Three Gorges Development Corporation (CTGPC).

On 2 April 1993, the State Council TGP Construction Committee defined the project management system and financing sources and approved the Regulations for TGP Migrant Relocation at the first meeting.



On 29 July 1993, the State Council TGP Construction Committee approved the Report of Preliminary Design of the Three Gorges Project forwarded by Changjiang Water Resource Commission the second committee meeting, which indicates the project entered into the overall preparation stage for construction.

On 27 Sept 1993, China Yangtze Three Gorges Development Corporation (CTGPC) was, under the authorization of the State Council, founded in Yichang, Hubei province.

On 14 Dec 1994, the Three Gorges project was officially started.

On 8 Nov 1997, the river close-off succeeded, which indicates the construction target of phase I was completed.

On 6 Nov 2002, the close-off of diversion channel succeeded.

On 1 st June 2003, the reservoir began its storage, the water reached at 135m on 10 June and at 139m on 5 November.

On 16 June 2003, the trial navigation of ship lock succeeded. On 18 June 2003, the ship lock started to be open to all sorts of ships.

On 10 July 2003, the first generator unit began generating and connected to power grid.

On 8 July 2004, the double-way and five-step ship lock passed acceptance by an official group (water level between 135 ~ 139m).

On 25 April 2004, the 12 th generator unit began generating. Till 30 June 2005, Three Gorges power plant produced totally 68.1 billion kW · h, which wields a powerful function to relieve the pressure of national electricity gap, and a big promotion to the shape of national interconnection with trans-regional transmission.



Cultural Links 文化链接

长江三峡

长江从世界屋脊——青藏高原的沱沱河起步,至上海入东海,全长 6300 余公里,年入海水量近 10 000 亿立方米,总落差 5 800 多米,水能资源蕴藏量达 2.68 亿千瓦。然而,新中国成立以来,为全面地综合治理与开发

长江,展开了大规模的勘测、规划、科研和论证工作。通过全面规划和反复论证认为:三峡水利枢纽是综合治理与开发长江的关键性工程。长江自奉节至宜昌近 200 公里的江段,穿越瞿塘峡、巫峡、西陵峡等三段大峡谷,长江三峡为该三段大峡谷的总称。位于西陵峡中段的湖北省宜昌市境内的三斗坪(距下游的葛洲坝水利枢纽 38 公里),江谷开阔,花岗岩岩基坚硬、完整,并可控制上游流域面积 100 万平方公里,多年平均径流量近 5 000 亿立方米。经过数十年的艰辛勘测、规划、论证、审定后,举世瞩目的长江三峡工程特选址于该地三斗坪。

长江三峡水利枢纽工程(三峡大坝坝址)——中堡岛

长江三峡工程采用“一级开发,一次建成,分期蓄水,连续移民”方案。大坝为混凝土重力坝,坝顶总长 3 035 米,坝顶高程 185 米,正常蓄水水位 175 米,总库容 393 亿立方米,其中防洪库容 221.5 亿立方米。每秒排沙流量为 2 460 立方米,排沙孔分散布置于混凝土重力坝段和电站底部。泄洪坝段每秒泄洪能力为 11 万千瓦,年均发电量 849 亿度。左岸的通航建筑物,年单向通过能力 5 000 万吨。双线五级船闸,可通过万吨级船队;单线一级垂直升船机,可快速通过 3000 吨级的客货轮。

主体工程土石方开挖约 10 260 万立方米,土石方填筑约 2 930 万立方米,混凝土浇筑约 2 715 万立方米,金属结构安装约 28.1 吨。准备期 2 年。主体工程总工期 15 年,第 9 年开始启用永久通航建筑物和第一批机组发电。水库最终将淹没耕地 43.13 万亩;最终将动迁 113.18 万人。按 1993 年物价水平计算,静态总投资 954.6 亿元,其中枢纽工程 500.9 亿元;移民安置 300.7 亿元;输变电工程 153 亿元。

长江三峡工程竣工后,将发挥防洪、发电、航运、养殖、旅游、保护生态、净化环境、开发性移民、南水北调、供水灌溉等十大效益,是世界上任何巨型电站都无法比拟的!

Vocabulary 妙词连珠

bearing capacity 承载力

washing out 冲塌

tamping 打夯

pile-driving 打桩

diversion 导流

low water 低水位



inundation 泛滥	foundation pile 基桩
flood prevention 防洪	locking of the river 截流
flooding warning system 防洪警报装置	immersion 浸沉
flood prevention 防汛	warning line 警戒水位
exceptional water level 非常水位	dam breaking 决坝
flood diversion 分洪	dyke breaching; dyke bursting 决堤
flood diversion area 分洪区	building irrigation canals 开渠
summer flood 伏汛	record flood 空前未有的洪水
high water mark 高水位线	detaining silt; silt detention 拦蓄泥沙
carrying capacity 河槽容量	burlap bag 麻袋
flooded area 洪泛区	overflow 猛溢
peak flood 洪峰	be in spate 猛涨
flood level mark 洪水痕迹	cubic metres per second 秒立方米
volume of flood 洪水流量	average discharge 平均流量
retarding the down-rush of flood wa- ter 缓和洪水下泄	mean water 平均水位
reducing the discharge and velocity of water 减少流量、流速	mountain torrents 山洪
	dredging navigable canals 疏浚河道

U 青藏铁路

Unit 6 Qinghai-Tibet Railway

Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. Why did China built the Qinghai-Tibet Railway?
中国为什么修建青藏铁路?
2. Transportation is the most basic prerequisite for any area to seek development.
任何地区想谋求发展,交通都是最基本的前提。
3. As an old Chinese saying goes: "If people want to be rich, they must first build roads."
中国有句古话“要想富,先修路。”
4. The construction of railway will bring fortune and benefits to Tibetan people.
这项工程可以给西藏人民带来繁荣和发展。
5. To built railway in Tibet will definitely benefit the local development in every aspect.
在西藏修建铁路从任何方面讲都绝对可以带动当地各种经济发展。
6. In fact, in only one month after Qinghai-Tibet Railway was open to traffic, local people have enjoyed a lot of practical benefits from it.
事实上,青藏铁路建成通车仅一个月后,当地群众就得到了很多实际的好处。
7. As for the problem on traditional Tibetan cultural protection and environmental protection that has attracted wide attention so far.
目前为止,西藏的传统文化和自然保护已经得到了充分的重视。



8. The railway will make cultural exchange more frequent, introduce it to the outside world, and prosper it.
铁路的开通,可以促进文化的交流与发展。
9. On the Qinghai-Tibet Railway, 1.5 billion Yuan was invested in environmental protection.
在青藏铁路投资 15 亿元用于保护环境。
10. Tibet is the place where ethnic culture was preserved to the most complete extent, and where people can enjoy traditional culture with original taste.
西藏是民俗文化保存最完整的区域,在这里人们可以享受原汁原味的传统文化。
11. Tourists shall experience and compare in person, and experience the great efforts that Chinese government has exerted on the protection of Tibetan culture.
游客应亲身体验和比较,可以发现中国政府已经尽了最大的努力来保护藏族文化。
12. The opening of the Qinghai-Tibet Railway means that more and more Chinese and foreign tourists would realize their “Tibet Dream”.
青藏铁路的通车,意味着更多的中外游客将实现他们的“西藏梦”。
13. Its report released recently shows that the price in Tibet is stable, and even drops slightly.
最近的报告表明,西藏的物价平稳,甚至略有下降。
14. During the 20 days after Qinghai-Tibet Railway opened on July 1, Tibet has received a total of 300 000 tourists, an increase of 40% to the same period of last year.
青藏铁路在七月一日开通以后的 20 天内,西藏共接待游客 30 万,比去年同期增加了 40%。

15. The Qinghai-Tibet railway is 1 956 kilometers long, with 960 km of the track located 4 000 meters above the sea level and the highest point at 5 072 meters.
青藏铁路全长 1 956 千米,有 960 千米的轨道位于海拔 4 000 米,最高点海拔 5 072 米。
16. It stretches from Xining, capital of Qinghai Province, to Lhasa.
它横跨青海省省会西宁,直通到拉萨。
17. The increased tourist numbers brings enormous business opportunities, and challenges.
旅游人数的增加,带来了巨大的商机和挑战。
18. Airlines have begun to offer discounts on tickets to Tibet.
航空公司已开始提供折扣西藏机票。
19. The Fenghoushan Tunnel, 4 900 meters above sea level, is the world's highest permafrost tunnel.
风火山隧道,海拔 4 900 米,是世界最高的冻土隧道。
20. The Kunlun Mountain Tunnel, 4 700 meters above sea level, is the world's longest permafrost tunnel.
昆仑山隧道,海拔 4 700 米,是世界上最长的冻土隧道。
21. And Tanggula Station, 5 000 meters above sea level, is the world's highest railway station.
唐古拉山车站,海拔 5 000 米,是世界上最高的火车站。
22. The tracks cut across one of the world's most fragile ecosystems.
铁轨穿越世界上最脆弱的生态系统。



Wonderful Paragraph

精彩片段

Paragraph 1

W 中国为什么修建青藏铁路? hy China Built Qinghai-Tibet Railway?

Why did China build the Qinghai-Tibet Railway? This is an “ignorant



question”. Transportation is the most basic prerequisite for any area to seek development. “If people want to be rich, they must first build roads.” This is a Chinese proverb. The construction of railway will bring fortune and benefits to Tibetan people, according to Mr. Wu Yingjie, minister of Public Relations Department of Tibet Autonomous Region.

After Qinghai-Tibet Railway went into operation on July 1, some foreign reporters are always curious about the role of this line. Mr. Wu, during an interview on August 7, said that once a German reporter raised a question: why did China build railway in Tibet? What will be the influence on local politics by this line? Wu Yingjie asked a rhetorical question: “I have just finished a business trip in Germany last month. I saw two parallel railways along Rhine, with trains shuttling on them. Why should Germany build railways along Rhine?”

Mr. Wu said, any people with common sense knew that transportation is the basic prerequisite for any area to seek development. “To build railway in Tibet will definitely benefit the local development in every aspect, and the beneficiary will definitely be the local people. Why couldn’t some people understand such a simple reasoning?”

In fact, in only one month after Qinghai-Tibet Railway was open to traffic, local people have enjoyed a lot of practical benefits from it. Wu Yingjie cited an example: there is a Tibet High School in Beijing, to which Tibet will send excellent students to study every year. Before the railway was open, due to the high travel cost of around 5 000 Yuan, students and parents couldn’t afford the money on road, and many students studying there couldn’t go home for family reunion for years. Today, the fare for train is only around 1 000 Yuan and students can get 50% -off. The opening of Qinghai-Tibet Railway coincides with summer vacation, so many Tibetan students in Beijing choose to take train to go back home.

R铁路带动了西藏文化的发展 **Railway Helps Developing Tibetan Culture**

After the Qinghai-Tibet Railway opened in July, some American reporters opugned that the railway would destroy the traditional ethnic culture in Tibet. With this question in mind, chinadaily.com.cn reporter interviewed Mr. Wang Daiyuan, vice director of the Economic and Strategic Research Institute of Tibetan Academy of Social Science last week. Director Wang said the Tibetan culture is well preserved and the accusations are groundless.

Tibet is the place where ethnic culture was preserved to the most complete extent, and where people can enjoy traditional culture with original taste. Chinese government's protection of Tibetan culture is better than US government's protection of Indian culture, Wang said.

For this point, tourists shall experience and compare in person, and experience the great efforts that Chinese government has exerted on the protection of Tibetan culture.

With the opening of the Qinghai-Tibet Railway, more and more Chinese and foreign tourists will come to Tibet, the most important influence on the traditional Tibetan culture shall be that more people will learn and understand Tibetan culture, and bring forward the excellent traditional Tibetan culture, Wang added.

A traveller also said: "It is taken for granted that along with the increase in incoming population, there will be some changes in conception, which is objective. Any nation in the world and any society shall admit that culture is constantly evolving, and cultural development is an objective law. US' protection of Indian culture cannot resist the rule of self-development with Indian culture. Cultural evolution is an irresistible trend, we shall deal with it by adopting measures with a view to effective guidance."

On the protection of traditional cultures, he said, at the time of coexistence of traditional ethnic and national cultures around the world, people did not realize the importance of protection. Nowadays, when traditional cultures are less and less, the human has a strong consciousness of traditional cultural protection. As long as having seen with their own eyes in Ti-



bet, friends from home and abroad will be able experience the strength of Chinese government's protection of traditional Tibetan culture.

Paragraph 3

P西藏旅行的价格调控 **Price Leverage to Apply in Tibet Tourism**

The opening of the Qinghai-Tibet Railway means that more and more Chinese and foreign tourists would realize their “Tibet Dream”. But with the influx of tourists, will the commodity price in Tibet be negatively influenced due to the increase in tourists? The answer from the Development and Reform Committee of Tibet Autonomous Region is: No.

Its report released recently shows that the price in Tibet is stable, and even drops slightly. For the protection of key tourist resources and cultural relics, the report says, the rules of market economy shall be followed, and the price leverage will be utilized to balance the conflict between tourists number and accommodation capability.

According to Vice Director He Benyun of the committee, with the Qinghai-Tibet Railway, it is more convenient and faster for various materials to enter Tibet from other parts of the country, so while the market supply is enriched, the overall price drops, particularly consumer goods, so local people in Tibet can receive visible benefits.

During the 20 days after Qinghai-Tibet Railway opened on July 1, Tibet has received a total of 300 000 tourists, an increase of 40% to the same period of last year. Under such a circumstance, there is no big fluctuation with price in Tibet, He said.

He also added that due to the increase in incoming transportation capacity, the price of some consumer goods has dropped. However, for the purpose of protecting key tourist resources and cultural relics such as the Potala Palace, He Benyun pointed out that in the future, the laws of market economy shall be followed, and price leverage be used to balance the conflict between tourist number and receiving capacity.

The Qinghai-Tibet railway is 1 956 kilometers long, with 960 km of the track located 4 000 meters above the sea level and the highest point at 5 072 meters. It stretches from Xining, capital of Qinghai Province, to Lhasa.

The railway is the world's highest and longest plateau railroad and also the first railway connecting the Tibet Autonomous Region with the rest of China.

The railway is projected to help double tourism revenues in Tibet by 2010 and cut transport costs for goods by 75 percent. Until now, goods going to and from Tibet have been trucked over mountain highways that are often blocked by landslides or snow, making trade prohibitively expensive.

Paragraph 4

B北京至拉萨铁路的开通 **Beijing Train Arrives in Lhasa**

The first direct passenger train from China's capital of Beijing has arrived in Lhasa, the capital of the Tibet Autonomous Region. The inaugural train, carrying some 800 passengers, arrived at Lhasa Railway Station at 8:55 p. m. on Monday. It started its 4 060 kilometer journey from Beijing West Station at 9:30 p. m. on Saturday. Along the way, it passed major cities such as Shijiazhuang, Xi'an, Lanzhou and Xining. The train arrived in Xining, capital of northwest China's Qinghai Province at 6 p. m. on Sunday. From there... it began its run on the Qinghai-Tibet Railway, which went into operation on Saturday. The 1 956—kilometer-long Qinghai-Tibet railway stretches from Xining to Lhasa. It is the world's highest and longest plateau railroad. And also the first railway to connect the Tibet region with the rest of China.

Paragraph 5

Q青藏铁路展现出的奇迹 **Qinghai-Tibet Railway Reveals Wonder**

China's west is renowned for its mysterious beauty. In the past, many of its natural wonders have been almost impossible to reach. But with the opening of the Qinghai-Tibet railway, this is all about to change.

Distinctive Tibetan singing and dancing reflects local characteristics of Qinghai. In China there are 55 minority groups, Qinghai alone boasts 42 of them. Different minority groups have formed their own traditions as well as unique festivals and cultural activities.

Situated on the northeastern side of the Qinghai-Tibetan Plateau, Qing-



hai is the fourth largest province in China. Over half its area is between four and five thousand meters above sea level.

This is the biggest ceremony in the year for Tibetan Buddhism. It's held in You Ning Monastery, located 30 kilometers east of the downtown area. It's a very holy place for local Buddhists to worship. During the ceremony, people take part in prayer.

One hundred and fifty kilometers away from the provincial capital Xining lies one of the world largest salt-lakes-Qinghai Lake. It stretches endlessly into the horizon, resembling a huge emerald encased in plateau and grasslands. Northwest, lies Bird Island. Nowadays it's a National Nature Protection resort. From March to September over one hundred thousand rare birds migrate from Southeast Asia to lay their eggs here.

About 100 kilometers north of Lhasa is Namco Lake. Namco means "Heavenly Lake" in Tibetan. It's a famous Holy place of Tibetan Buddhism. Visitors can spend a night at the site living in one of the tourist tents. However, due to the lack of oxygen overnight, visitors should consider bringing an extra oxygen tank.

Paragraph 6

Q 青藏铁路：世界奇迹 **Qinghai-Tibet Railway: World Marvel**

With the first run of China's Qinghai-Tibet railway, transport in the Tibet Autonomous Region begins a new era. The miracle of engineering is also a marvel of environmental protection, and a testament to human ingenuity.

On the world's highest plateau, the Qinghai-Tibet railway has set records. The Fenghoushan Tunnel, 4 900 meters above sea level, is the world's highest permafrost tunnel. The Kunlun Mountain Tunnel, 4 700 meters above sea level, is the world's longest permafrost tunnel. And Tanggula Station, 5 000 meters above sea level, is the world's highest railway station. The railway is a miracle of engineering, but the project as a whole is a marvel in environmental protection and a testament to human ingenuity. The tracks cut across one of the world's most fragile ecosystems. Five nature reserves along its route. And one is the Hohxil Reserve, the largest habitat of the endangered Tibetan antelope. Nearly 200 million US dollars

have been invested to prevent the railway from disturbing the environment. Scientists and engineers worked together to minimize impact on the wildlife. Construction worker said: "In this section, we built bridges high enough to let the wild animals pass underneath. And in other sections, we re-designed the rail bed. The wider rail bed makes it easier for antelopes to cross." Other challenges are permafrost and thin oxygen. Heat conductors, ventilation ditches and thermal insulation protect the frozen soil. Special oxygen supplies are laid in for passenger comfort. The Qinghai-Tibet Railway was a hot topic even before the blueprints were drawn, and will remain so for years to come. And when full service starts in 2007, major cities including Beijing, Shanghai and Guangzhou, will be connected to Lhasa by the rail-link.

Paragraph 7

R铁路改变了旅游业 **Railway Changes Tourism**

Tibet welcomed nearly 2 million visitors last year. That figure is expected to triple by 2010 thanks to the completion of the Qinghai-Tibet railway. The increased tourist numbers brings enormous business opportunities, and challenges.

Zhuoma Quzong lives fifty kilometers from Lhasa, but only a hundred meters away from a small station on the Qinghai-Tibet Railway. The line is about to open to tourists, and Zhuoma and her husband are busy building a new house. They're expecting the flow of visitors can bring them a fortune.

Zhuoma said: "We plan to open a store here, and a hotel maybe. If business is good we'll build a bigger house."

Zhuoma says the house they're building has cost 30—thousand yuan. They're not sure if they really will make big money, but they're going to try.

The Qinghai-Tibet railway is expected to bring 3 000 visitors each day, as well as numerous business opportunities and challenges. Tourism industry insiders say it will lead to fiercer competition in Tibet's tourist market.

Manager Wang Ganglin of Tibet ZZL Travel Agency said: "The opening of the Qinghai-Tibet railway will lead to a new round of reshuffling in Tibet's

tourism industry. Visitors who come by train will probably have different needs and itineraries from those who travel by bus or plane. It will stimulate tourism-related businesses to improve their services so they can grab a bigger market share.”

Airlines have begun to offer discounts on tickets to Tibet. Hotels in Lhasa are busy redecorating, hoping to attract more clients to their newly-furnished rooms. A number of four-star hotels are preparing to open. As for the souvenir market, the uniform store layout, which lacks creativity, definitely needs to be changed.

Paragraph 8

C建设者: 为从事铁路事业而自豪 **Constructor: Worthy to Work for the Railway**

In the Dongguan Mosque of Xining city, chinadaily.com.cn reporter met Ma Manai, a Muslim of Dongxing minority who was attending religious service. In the past 4 years, he had led a construction team of 200 people working in every section of Qinghai-Tibet Railway.

Ma Manai is a pious Muslim from Gansu province, who will go to the mosque to attend religious service and study classics every day. In the past 4 years, he has been participating in the construction on the site of Qinghai-Tibet Railway, and many projects are carried out in March and April, the coldest season on Tibet Plateau. Working against wind and in snow-storm is the common occurrence on the plateau. But when being asked if he has altitude reaction, he replied with ease: “I have got used to it, since I was born in Gansu, and live in Qinghai for all time of my life.” He does not regard seriously plateau anoxia, at the mention of which people from inland will turn pale.

A span of 4 years is not a short time. Each year he would spend a half on the Qinghai-Tibet Railway far away from home. Recalling his life and work in the 4 years, the 40-year-old Ma Manai is as excited as a child. He regards it a happy experience to participate in such a project and work on the highest railway construction site on the world. It is the happiest thing for him to contribute something to his hometown and homeland. He said: “During my work, I always had contact with local Tibetan people, and it is

my happiest moment to see them being so happy for having a railway in their hometown. Even though there are bitterness and tiredness, I cannot feel them.”



Cultural Links

文化链接

青藏铁路

铁路的运输能力是任何一种交通方式都无法比拟的。青藏铁路一期工程(西宁至格尔木段)建成运营十多年来,已成为开发青海柴达木盆地及推动青、藏两省区经济发展的主要交通线路。它促进了青海钾肥厂、锡铁山铅锌矿、青海铝厂、青海油田、格尔木炼油厂、茫崖石棉矿和龙羊峡、李家峡两座大型水电站等一大批大中型项目的建设和发展,为青海 460 万各族人民脱贫致富和现代化建设打下了坚实的基础;同时也为西藏的开发发挥了重要作用,现在进藏物资的 85% 以上都要通过格尔木来转运。续建青藏铁路,将极大地提高综合运输能力,从根本上改善两省区的交通条件和投资环境。

建设青藏铁路,将完善路网布局,并一举实现西藏自治区的立体化交通。从路网布局看,西藏是一片空白,不仅如此,西藏与青海、青海与新疆均无铁路相连,青藏铁路纵贯青海、西藏两省区,是沟通西藏、青海与内地联系的具有战略意义的通道,也是西部腹地路网骨架的重要组成部分,更是今后建设区内路网的骨干铁路。同时,青藏铁路的建成通车,将形成铁路、公路和航空的立体化交通,彻底解决“进藏难”的问题。

建设青藏铁路,将对青、藏两省区的经济发展提供更广阔空间,使其优势资源得以更充分发展。同时,无论是国家巨额的投资,还是建设铁路所需的大量人力、物力,都将直接拉动青海、西藏两省区的经济发展,并促进其产业结构的合理调整,加快城镇化和工业化、现代化的进程,实现“跨越式”的发展。

建设青藏铁路,也是加强国内其他广大地区与西藏联系,促进藏族与其他各民族的文化交流,增强民族团结的需要。

建设青藏铁路,还是开发青海、西藏两省区丰富的旅游资源,促进两省区经济可持续发展的需要。

 Vocabulary
妙词连珠

standard gauge railway

标准轨距铁路

cogwheel railway 齿轨铁路

magnetic railway 磁性铁路

monorail; single track railway

单轨铁路

local railway 地方铁路

surface railway 地面铁道

district railway 地区铁路

underground subway 地下铁道

electric railway 电气化铁路

overhead railway 高架铁路

state railway 国营铁路

government railway 国有铁路

submarine railway 海底铁道

multiple track line 铁路复线

diagrammatic map of railway

铁路示意图

railway network 铁路网

railway line 铁路线

arrival and departure line 行车线

feeder line; hole 支线

main through line 主干线

main line 干线

branch line 主支线

bay line 专用支线

transcontinental railroad

横贯大陆铁路

circular railway 环行铁路

field railway 简易铁路

trunk railway 铁路干线

one track line 单轨铁路线

subway route 地下铁路线

crossover 渡线

loop line 环形侧线

connection 接轨短线

by-line 平行干线

up line 上行线

down line 下行线

suburban line 市郊支线

double-track line 双轨铁路线

geological survey 地质调查

geological structure 地质构造

location survey 定线测量

snow fence 防雪栅栏

crossbuck 道口叉标

gatekeeper's cabin 道口看守房

lattice barrier 道口栏杆

warning light 道口示警灯

warning cross 道口预告信号

trough 电缆槽

spiking 钉道钉

U 建设社会主义新农村 Unit 7 Build New Socialist Countryside

Key Sentences 流畅精句

1. According to The Eleventh Five-year Plan, China will endeavor to build new socialist countryside.
根据十一五规划,中国将努力构建社会主义新农村。
2. However, such an unprecedented undertaking may probably encounter some restrictions and risks.
但是,这样的空前壮举可能会受到一些限制遇到一些风险。
3. Firstly, how does the government to guarantee the strength of transfer payment from public finance?
首先,政府如何保障从公共财政转移支付的力量?
4. Lin Yifu, committee member of CPPCC and one of the designers of The New Countryside blueprint, believed that by the year 2020, there will need a total input of over RMB 4 trillion for the construction of the new Chinese countryside.
林毅夫政府委员是新农村蓝图设计者之一,他相信到 2020 年,为建设新中国农村,总共有必要投入超过 4 万亿元人民币。
5. In order to collect such a huge fund, it is necessary for public finance leaning to countryside besides activating rural financial credit.
为了收集这么庞大的基金,在激活农村金融信贷的同时我们有必要向农村倾斜国家财政。
6. Last year, central government allocated altogether RMB 297.5 billion to agriculture, countryside and farmer, and the total input this year is expected to reach RMB 339.5 billion.



去年,中央先后拨出 2975 亿元人民币支持三农,而今年的总投入预计将达到 3395 亿元人民币。

7. Nevertheless, the funds actually demanded in countryside are far beyond this.

然而,农村的资金实际需求远远超出了这个数字。

8. Only on rural education, the total government input is expected to reach RMB 40 billion; scholar Cao Jinqing estimated that the required input may reach as high as RMB 120 billion to 150 billion in order to accomplish the goal of completely remitting tuition and fees in the rural compulsory education period within the next two years.

只在农村教育这一方面,政府总投入预计就将达到 400 亿元人民币;学者曹金清估计,在未来两年内可能所需投入高达 1200 至 1500 元人民币用来完成农村义务教育期完全免除学杂费的目标。

9. There has been a huge gap between the capacity of public finance and the funds required.

国家财政能力与资金需求之间有很大的距离。

10. However, according to government's estimation, among the RMB 339.7 billion input in 2006, approximately RMB 100 billion are provided by central finance to local governments as subsidies for agricultural tax reduction, and there is still a gap of RMB 70 billion that can't be made up.

不过,据政府估计,在 2006 年投入的 3397 亿人民币中,大约 1 000 亿元是由中央财政向地方政府补贴农业减税,还有 700 亿人民币没有着落。

11. "We must plan and build a new socialist countryside that satisfies farmers' demands for water supply, road construction and clean and tidy surroundings.

我们一定要规划和建设社会主义新农村,满足农民的对供水、道路建设及整洁村容的要求。

12. Only when farmers can reap real benefits from the campaign, will they become fully involved.

只有农民从中得到了实惠,他们才能有积极性投入建设中来。

13. Our target is that by 2010, remarkable progress will be made in rural economy; balanced development will be achieved in the agriculture, manufacturing and service sectors; and all rural labourers will be employed.

我们的目标是:到 2010 年,农村经济得到显著发展,农业、制造业和服务业得到均衡发展,农村劳动力全部就业。

14. In building a new countryside, we will stick to the principles of nurturing new industries, creating a new environment, cultivating a new image for the farmers and establishing new systems.

在建设新农村中我们将坚持培育新兴产业,创造新的环境,培养农民的新形象,并建立新体制的原则。

15. Future policy concerning social security will tilt in favour of rural areas, with more and more public service penetrating to the grassroots level and directly benefiting farmers.

未来的政策将向农村倾斜,把社会保障倾斜到支持农村越来越多的公共服务建设之中,使之渗透到基层使农民直接受益。



Wonderful Paragraph

精彩片段

Paragraph 1

“三农”政策的阐述 Three Agricultural Policy Represented

At the Central Economic Working Conference of this 2006, The meeting emphasizes “settles the Three Agricultural” Issues well and concerns the overall situation of the well-off society of comprehensive construction and socialist modernization drive again, point out that “builds the socialist new countryside, must do master plan and concrete arrangement well, insist on planning to go ahead of the rest, do a good job of the pilot project to demonstrate, there are steps, move forward progressively in a planned way,



with particular emphasis”, require “will be sure to have good beginnings that the socialist new countryside is built next year” clearly. “the socialist new countryside is built” is a meaningful concept. In recent years, increase peasant’s income, lighten peasant burden, adjust national income distribution structure, let newly-increased expenditure slope to “three agricultural” it is party in power and central government policy that make emphasis point. Put forward “whether socialist new countryside build” concept, in what respect expand with getting thinning 2004, 2005 two “File No. one” “three agricultural” policy represented? We analyze and think, the following main points and the trend need holding:

First, further solved the state responsibilities (all national responsibility) of “‘Three Agricultural’ Issues” clearly. On concept, contain, dwindle until fill and lead up the wide gap in urban and Agricultural areas through industrial countryside route, agriculture of back feeding and back feeding of city, rose to the country to develop strategic height since “favoured the policies of the people”. Reach fund offer, go to specifically, remedy countryside social public product insufficient in supply clearly, mainly by government’s expenditure. In addition, the financial fund will bear the leading factor, prize agricultural infrastructure construction responsibility. Getting distinct ambiguous statement of “expenditure to ‘three agricultural’ slope” in the past like this. Third, regard developing Agricultural economy as the centre, while not regard “‘Three Agricultural’ Issues” as the simple economic question one-side, will promote “development index” of rural all-side social progress to include in the planned range.

Extend and always advocate on “‘Three Agricultural’ Issues”, appraise intension and trend that “the new countryside is built”, we think, this strategical planning meaning is positive, great. Say in essence, “‘Three Agricultural’ Issues” are “political economy” questions, can only solve on the state responsibility aspect. Study carefully its origin cause of formation, “‘Three Agricultural’ Issues” have “unresistable factor” that companions grow the national industrialized process to lead to, ferment, have long-term interests regulate improper too and “whether three agricul-

tural ” relevant unable to maintain the origin rights and interests. Moreover key part of “ ‘ Three Agricultural ’ Issues ” marketlization dispose resource can dissolve.

Paragraph 2

C中国解放政策：建设社会主义新农村 China Releases Policies on Building “New Socialist Countryside”

China's central authorities released its first major document of the year which calls for the construction of a “new socialist countryside” as the foremost task facing China in the 2006—2010 five-year period.

The document said the next five years will be key to laying a solid foundation for the new socialist countryside construction. Its aim is to boost modern agriculture, develop new relationships between industry and agriculture, cities and countryside, and increases rural affluence.

The ideas set forth by the central authorities listed eight policy priorities to promote the reconstruction of the countryside:

Plan economic, social development in urban, rural areas as a whole, and firmly promote construction of the new countryside; Boost modern agriculture to consolidate industrial support to the new countryside construction; Ensure sustained increases of farmers' income to lay a solid rural economic foundation; Increase infrastructure construction in rural areas to improve rural material conditions; Accelerate development of public services in the countryside and encourage new farmers; Deepen comprehensive rural reform to guarantee systematic protection for rural people; Improve democracy in rural areas and perfect rural management; Enhance leadership and motivate all party members and the entire society to care, support and participate in the construction of a new countryside. “Constructing a new socialist countryside is an important historic task in the process of China's modernization,” said the document.

The document also stressed that construction of the new countryside should focus on practical development and involve democratic consulta-



tions.

Paragraph 3

H带头建设新农村(1) **urdles Ahead for Building “New Countryside”(1)**

According to The Eleventh Five-year Plan, China will endeavor to build new socialist countryside. However, such an unprecedented undertaking may probably encounter the following restrictions and risks.

Firstly, how does the government to guarantee the strength of transfer payment from public finance? Lin Yifu, committee member of CPPCC and one of the designers of The New Countryside blueprint, believed that by the year 2020, there will need a total input of over RMB 4 trillion for the construction of the new Chinese countryside. In order to collect such a huge fund, it is necessary for public finance leaning to countryside besides activating rural financial credit.

Nevertheless, the funds actually demanded in countryside are far beyond this. Only on rural education, the total government input is expected to reach RMB 40 billion; scholar Cao Jinqing estimated that the required input may reach as high as RMB 120 billion to 150 billion in order to accomplish the goal of completely remitting tuition and fees in the rural compulsory education period within the next two years. There has been a huge gap between the capacity of public finance and the funds required.

Secondly, the huge finance budget deficits in towns and villages make it possible for financial transfer payment to be intercepted halfway.

According to the figures provided by Qiu Xiaohua, standing deputy director of National Bureau of Statistics in the recent press conference, local financial revenues last year enjoyed a favorable balance of more than RMB 97 billion rather than deficits. However, according to Cao's estimation, among the RMB 339.7 billion input in 2006, approximately RMB 100 billion are provided by central finance to local governments as subsidies for agricultural tax reduction, and there is still a gap of RMB 70 billion that can't be made up.

Paragraph 4

H 带头建设新农村(2) **Hurdles Ahead for Building "New Countryside" (2)**

In the future, the total transfer payment allocated by central and local finance is only RMB 103.2 billion, which still has a long distance compared with rural financial deficits, direct taxes paid by farmers engaged in other production and operation activities, as well as the sum of indirect taxes and implicit taxes shouldered by farmers.

If the rural taxes and fees reform wasn't carried out accompanied by the reform of rural grassroots administration, some grassroots governments are well possible to appropriate financial transfer payment as the salaries of government staff in order to get out of financial crisis and existence difficulties, thus public benefit executant becoming public benefit despoiler. We should be prepared for this biggest risk of new countryside construction.

Whether the farmland reform mode in Japan after World War II, or the land reform mode in Taiwan region, these successful reforms, though different in methods, have one point in common: enabling the massive farmers to become the direct beneficiaries of the reform is the best measure to determine the overall economic expectation.

Just on this point, improvement is needed at present. Among local governments' "net income from land transfer fees" of more than RMB 230 billion every year, a considerable part of which are from farmland value-added income; however, what the countryside has got from the income is even less than 15 percent (policy object). All these are important issues deserving policy makers' consideration.

Paragraph 5

C 大学生参加新农村建设活动 **College Students Join "New Countryside" Construction Drive**

Chinese college students will go to the countryside during their summer



vacation to publicize “new socialist countryside” policies and help rural residents improve their lives.

The students will head to around 1 000 villages in 600 teams, with 100 teams devoted to publicizing government policies, 100 publicizing the “socialist concept of honor and disgrace”, 100 providing technical assistance to farmers, 100 giving lectures to rural students, 100 providing medical and health care and 100 teams of PhD students offering advice on local economic development, according to the activity plan.

The summer vacation of Chinese colleges and universities generally start in July and last for around one and a half months. The government usually organizes college students to make field trips to the countryside and other grass-roots units.

A circular, jointly issued by the Ministry of Education and several other organizations, said the activity is “an effective approach” to improving the ideological and political education of college students.

“It is also an important measure to allow college students to play a role in the ‘new countryside’ construction,” says the circular.

The government seeks to promote rural development with the “building of a socialist new countryside” program, which aims to improve agricultural production, ethos, living standards, appearance and public administration in the rural areas.

Paragraph 6

N展望社会主义新农村 **ew Socialist Countryside Envisioned**

“We must plan and build a new socialist countryside that satisfies farmers’ demands for water supply, road construction and clean and tidy surroundings. Only when farmers can reap real benefits from the campaign, will they become fully involved,” said Wang Shiliang, secretary of the Zhaoyuan Committee of the Communist Party of China.

Dubbed as “the Gold Capital of China,” Zhaoyuan in Shandong Province is a pioneer in the campaign of new socialist countryside construction,



now in full swing across the country.

“Zhao yuan will strive to meet the standards of a new socialist countryside over the next five years, with an annual per capita net income growth of 10 percent for local farmers,” said Wang.

“Our target is that by 2010, remarkable progress will be made in rural economy; balanced development will be achieved in the agriculture, manufacturing and service sectors; and all rural labourers will be employed.”

While looking to the future, Wang stressed on the role of model villages with a relatively good economic basis, well-adjusted agricultural structure and pleasant natural environment.

He feels these villages should give a shot in the arm to their neighbours to eventually lift the entire countryside to a new level.

In order to avoid disorderly development, the city has given high priority to a clear and comprehensive programme through which farmers are made aware of the prospects and implementation of this far-reaching movement.

Paragraph 7

C 中国政府为贫困地区提供更好的待遇 China Shifts Focus to Poor with “New Deal”

Chinese government have launched their most ambitious initiative in decades, promising billions of dollars in social spending and farm aid this week to help the 800 million people in its neglected countryside catch up with its booming cities.

A Chinese woman pours water into her container near a newly dug aqueduct in Xiangfan, China's Hubei province March 6, 2006. Premier Wen Jiabao told parliament on Sunday that China would channel its surging economic growth to improve living conditions of rural people and narrow the widening gap between the country's rich cities and restive countryside.

The blueprint unveiled at the meeting of China's parliament rivals U. S. President Franklin D. Roosevelt's job-creating New Deal of the 1930s in scale, and is aimed at easing mounting tensions over the growing gap be-



tween China's rich and poor.

But Beijing faces daunting challenges making it work in the countryside, where control over local leaders is limited, abuses are common and anger at corruption and land seizures is rising.

"The countryside is very much like a lawless place," said Ding Xueliang, a former Communist Party official who teaches at the Hong Kong University of Science and Technology.

The plan for a "new socialist countryside" promises new schools, hospitals, roads and other aid to the countryside, where many people are as poor as ever while a small elite have prospered from two decades of economic reform.

The programs are the starting point of what the ruling party has said will be an effort lasting at least a decade to shift development resources to the countryside.

"China is now standing at a new historical starting point," Premier Wen Jiabao said Sunday in a speech to parliament delegates.

Ding said the current leaders are better aware of what is going on than previous generations.

President Hu Jintao and Wen spent many years in Tibet and other impoverished regions, and they have extensive contacts outside Beijing.

"They know much more about the realities in the terribly poor regions," Ding said.

A key source of rural unrest is the seizure of farmland by local officials who sell it at a profit to developers to build shopping malls, factories and other projects. Thousands of protests have erupted over complaints that farmers are paid too little.

Paragraph 8

C 对农村老年人贫困生活的忧虑 Concern over Plight of Old People in Countryside

The fast-ageing process has placed a burden on traditional Chinese family-supporting pension mechanisms in rural areas. Deputies attending

the National People's Congress (NPC) are urging the government to build a social security system for old people in rural areas, covering basic living costs and medical expenses.

The latest national census in 2000 showed that among the 133 million people aged over 60 in China, more than 85.57 million are in the countryside. The countryside has a faster ageing process than cities around 1.23 percent higher and the gap will not be closed until 2040, said a recent report on China's ageing process released by the China Ageing Committee in February.

Different from developed countries, China has a higher level of old people in the countryside, rather than in cities, said Li Bengong, an official of the committee, as quoted by Xinhua News Agency, adding that the countryside, especially in western China, faces a great ageing pressure.

While the majority of the elderly in cities are covered by the social security system, the elderly in rural areas are usually forced to depend on their offspring for their living and health care expenses.

The lack of pensions, the burden of diseases, and the reliance on the children's sense of family responsibility, lead to an unsatisfactory, or even terrible, life for the older rural population.

Experts at the Chinese Academy of Social Sciences estimate that 9 per cent of the rural senior population is living in poverty. However, deputies from the countryside said they saw a more serious poverty problem.

"Some old people are living very badly. They don't have money to treat disease. In some cases, their families are too poor to provide enough food," said Yang Shaojun, NPC deputy from Central China's Hunan Province.

"The government shall build an aiding system for rural people over 75 years old, who usually can't take any labour work. The support shall start with basic living costs."

Currently, an aiding system sponsored by the central government is available in 15 provinces, covering more than 7 million rural people. However, the aid is mostly for farmers who are hit by disasters.



G 政府决定建设社会主义新农村(1) Government Resolves to Build “Socialist New Countryside”(1)

Chinese Premier Wen Jiabao pledged that his government would increase the funding for rural development this year, the latest of a series of official moves aimed at speeding up the modernization of China's vast countryside.

Addressing the closing ceremony of a high-level seminar with the theme of “building a socialist new countryside,” Wen highlighted the importance of rural development, calling it a “major historic mission during the process of the country's modernization.”

The premier's promise came only days after Chinese President Hu Jintao made a similar speech last Tuesday at the opening ceremony of the seminar, participated by all central government ministers and provincial heads from all over the country.

Experts said that the two leader's speeches provide a clear-cut definition of the fresh development concept of “building a socialist new countryside,” first put forth at a plenary session of the Central Committee of the ruling Communist Party of China (CPC) late last year.

The experts believe the Chinese leadership has decided to make “building a socialist new countryside” a top priority in the country's pursuit of modernization, designed to be initially achieved in mid 21st century.

In his Tuesday speech, President Hu said that building a socialist new countryside will be the “most arduous and toughest” task for China on its road to modernization and common prosperity.

It is imperative to properly handle the relationship between industrial and agricultural development, and between urban and rural development, Hu said.

Political analysts here noted that the just-concluded seminar was the fourth of its kind since 2003, with the previous three focusing on “very im-

portant topics" like "the important thought of 'Three Represents'," "a scientific view of development," and "building a harmonious socialist society."

"The holding of such a high-level seminar itself has reflected the strategic importance of the building of a socialist new countryside," said Ke Bingsheng, director of a rural economic research center under China's Agricultural Ministry.

Paragraph 10

G 政府决定建设社会主义新农村(2) **Government Resolves to Build** **"Socialist New Countryside" (2)**

In his speech, Premier Wen again stressed the necessity to balance urban and rural development and to increase financial support to agricultural and rural development.

The country shall allocate more social and economic resources to the underdeveloped countryside, including more public spendings in the rural areas, improved public services for the rural residents, and a shift of focus in national infrastructure construction in favor of the rural areas, he elaborated.

Ke, the rural problem researcher, said that the week-long seminar will help improve senior officials' understanding of the importance of rural development, and will prompt them to provide more financial support to rural areas at all levels.

The ruling Communist Party of China outlined the task of "building a socialist new countryside" last October when unveiling its blueprint for the country's overall development in the coming five years.

During the Chinese Lunar New Year holidays which fell at the end of January, Chinese President Hu Jintao and Premier Wen Jiabao both went to the countryside and celebrated the traditional festival with the farmers.

Experts believe this has sent a clear signal that the leadership are determined to make the country's countryside a much better place character-



ized by more balanced and harmonious social and economic development.

Premier Wen said earlier that building a socialist new countryside should not be interpreted as merely constructing villages, although changing the face of the countryside does require such construction.

Experts predict that in the coming months, a series of concrete policies would be announced to back rural development.

Wen has said that this year public spendings on rural development should exceed that of last year, though the details of the budget will not be available until the annual session of the national legislature is convened early next month.

But the premier has made it clear that increased spendings on education, public health and culture would be used mainly in the countryside, while the urban areas should support rural development through various channels.



Cultural Links

文化链接

社会主义新农村“新”在何处

“生产发展”——推进现代农业建设,强化社会主义新农村建设的产业支撑。大力提高农业科技创新和转化能力;加强农村现代流通体系建设;稳定发展粮食生产;积极推进农业结构调整;发展农业产业化经营;加快发展循环农业。

“生活宽裕”——促进农民持续增收,夯实社会主义新农村建设的经济基础。拓宽农民增收渠道;保障务工农民的合法权益;稳定、完善、强化对农业和农民的直接补贴政策;加强扶贫开发工作。

“乡风文明”——加快发展农村义务教育,大规模开展农村劳动力技能培训;繁荣农村文化事业,加强县文化馆、图书馆和乡镇文化站、村文化室等公共文化设施建设;推动实施农民体育健身工程;扶持农村业余文化队伍,鼓励农民兴办文化产业,开展和谐家庭、和谐村组、和谐村镇创建活动。

“村容整洁”——加快农村能源建设步伐,在适宜地区积极推广沼气、秸秆气化、小水电、太阳能、风力发电等清洁能源技术;以沼气池建设带动农村改圈、改厕、改厨;加强村庄规划和人居环境治理;引导和帮助农民切

实解决住宅与畜禽圈舍混杂问题,搞好农村污水、垃圾治理,改善农村环境卫生。

“管理民主”——以建设社会主义新农村为主题,在全国农村深入开展保持共产党员先进性教育活动,加强农村基层组织的阵地建设;健全村党组织领导的充满活力的村民自治机制,进一步完善村务公开和民主议事制度,完善村民“一事一议”制度,健全农民自主筹资筹劳的机制和办法。

Vocabulary 妙词连珠

vegetable bed 菜畦	accountant 会计
vegetable garden 菜园	farm water supply engineering 农田给水工程
barn yard 仓场	agricultural drain 农田排水
year-round mutual aid team 长年互助组	farm reservoir 农田水库
elementary agricultural producers' co- operative 初级农业生产合作社	farm dam 农田蓄水坝
village 村落	farm pond 农用水塘
cottage 村舍	drainage and irrigation network 排灌网
villages and small towns 村镇	pumping station 排灌站
threshing ground 打谷场	drainage quota 排水定额
brigade office 大队部	scheme for irrigation and drainage 排水计划
rice granary 稻谷仓	ditch 水渠
bean pole 豆架	drawdown 水位下降
tomato stake 番茄架	water quality 水质
non-agrarian population 非农业人口	terrace outlet channel 梯田排水道
woman leader 妇女队长	terrace system 梯田系统
vice leader 副队长	irrigation by pumping 提水灌溉
harrower 耕地者	a riverside well connected with the river with a ditch or pipeline 透河井
irrigation supervisor 管水员	soil moisture deficit 土壤缺水度
fruit grower 果农	
flower grower 花农	



U 西部大开发

Unit 8 Western China Development Drive



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. The Chinese central government announced a major, new initiative to develop China's poor, backward western regions—Western China Development Drive.
中国中央政府宣布一项重大的发展我国贫困落后的西部地区的举措——西部大开发政策。
2. It does plan to invest some resources in the development of transportation and communications infrastructure.
它计划投资一些资源用于开发交通和通信基础设施建设。
3. Leaders of the Gansu S&T Committee want to change the province's industrial base from environmentally damaging heavy industry to light, high tech industries like materials sciences, biotechnology, traditional medicine, and nuclear medicine.
甘肃科技领导委员会决定改变全省破坏环境的重工业基地,发展以轻工、高科技产业如材料科学、生物技术、中医学、放射医学等为主的战略布置。
4. The major benefit of the western development drive, according to local S&T officials, would be policy changes to improve the investment climate and entice the desired high-tech investors to Gansu.
西部大开发有很大的好处,据此当地科技部门将改变政策,改善投资环境,吸引了预期的高科技投资者来甘肃。
5. They were also counting on increased investment by central government ministries in transportation and communications infrastructure

and central government pressure on wealthier, eastern provinces to invest in the west as major components.

他们还依靠中央政府增加投资基础设施、交通通讯并依赖于政府调动发达地区及东部省份来投资。

6. The Torch Program, which develops high technology for use in rural areas, was primarily focused on eastern areas in the past, and S&T Commission staff hoped the new initiative would increase resources in the program area.

科技委员会成员希望一直致力于东部农村科技发展的火炬计划能转移到西部来。

7. The Gansu Provincial Forestry Bureau also saw new policies encouraging reforestation, along with grain subsidies to farmers to encourage tree planting, as the major benefit of the new drive.

甘肃省林业局还颁布新政策,鼓励造林,给予粮食补贴,鼓励农民植树,提高新的经济利益。

8. The Xinjiang S&T Committee did not expect the Development Plan to produce many specific projects, but instead lead to an improved investment climate, increased education levels, and new policies to provide economic opportunities.

新疆科委,并不是期望发展计划包含多少具体项目,而是期望能使投资环境改善,教育水平提高,并提供新的经济发展机会。

9. They anticipated some central government funding for infrastructure improvements like dams for hydropower and irrigation, but no more than RMB 700 to 800 million (approximately USD 90—100 million).

他们预计中央政府拨款用于部分基础设施,例如水电、灌溉水坝的改善,但不会超过7亿至8亿元人民币(约合9000万至1亿美元)

10. Both the EPB and the Forestry Bureau hope the new policies will encourage private investment, both from Chinese firms in other parts of China and from foreign firms, into sustainable agriculture and production of high quality fruit and food processing.

环保局和林业局都希望新政策能鼓励来自本土其他地区的国内公



司和外国公司的私人投资纳入可持续农业和优质水果生产和食品加工。

11. The Qinghai S&T Committee expects that the Western Development Program will bring more scientists to Qinghai, a poor province with relatively few technically trained people.

青海科委希望西部大开发计划,将带来更多科学家到青海这样一个贫穷、技术落后的省份。

12. All of the officials met in the three provinces clearly hoped that the western development initiative would lead to economic improvements in the West.

三省的官员会面,期待着西部大开发举措能够带动西部的发展。

13. The motivations behind the Western Development Program—easing the income disparities between coastal and interior China—are laudable.

西部开发计划的动机——减少我国沿海与内地之间的收入差距——这是值得称赞的。



Wonderful Paragraph

精彩片段

Paragraph 1

C 中国的西部地区 China's Western Region

China's western region includes 11 provinces, autonomous regions and municipalities under the direct administration of the central government. These include the following: Shaanxi, Qinghai, Sichuan, Yunnan, Guizhou, Ningxia, Xinjiang, Inner Mongolia, Gansu, Tibet and Chongqing. The region covers 5.4 million square kilometers, 57 per cent of the country's land area, and has a population of 285 million people, 23 per cent of the total population of the nation. More than half of the country's identified natural resources are in the western region.



Despite its relatively vast size, the region is not very fertile. Water resources are in scarce supply, and are dependent on the vagaries of climate variability from year to year and decade to decade. Speculation aside, it is not yet clear what influence global warming has had or will have on inter-annual climate variability in western China. Thus, the paucity of fertile soil combined with the uncertainties of precipitation makes it a difficult region for widespread agricultural production activities. Making things even worse is the fact that severe wind erosion is a constant occurrence in the region; in fact, eroded areas in the western region are estimated to make up 80 per cent of the country's total eroded land. In addition, the resulting dust-laden winds can worsen environmental conditions thousand of kilometers or more downwind—as evidenced by the several sandstorms that have plagued Beijing in recent years. More dramatic in a global sense has been the spread, notably since at least the late 1990s, of major dust storms across the Pacific Ocean to regions as far distant as North America. Furthermore, meteorological observations show that the strength and frequency of these sandstorms, which are mainly generated in the western desert and semi-arid regions, have increased significantly in recent times.

The bottom line is that the western provinces, as defined geographically by China, are the least populated but have considerable untapped human and natural resources. These provinces also happen to have the largest share of China's minority cultures. How then to dismantle that invisible wall for the betterment of all concerned?

This task is rendered even more difficult by the fact that along with the rapid development of its economy in recent years, China is also suffering from the degradation of its natural environment (water, land and air). That degradation has been well recorded and reported: Water and air pollution due to the increasing number of factories, cars, and people as a result of increasing affluence and a lack of enforcement of environmental laws; soil erosion due to uncontrolled deforestation, grazing activities and other improper land use activities; intermittent as well as chronic water shortages as well as declining water quality; longer periods of low or no



flow in the country's major rivers due to waste and mismanagement of water; desertification and an increase in the frequency and intensity and duration of dust transport due to poor land use practices, and so forth. These problems lie squarely at the intersection of naturally occurring climate change and human-caused land-use changes that also affect regional climate, and clearly need to be taken into account, if China is to be able to successfully and develop its western provinces in a sustainable way.

Indeed, the Chinese government has chosen to vigorously pursue the economic development of its western provinces. It seeks to raise the standard of living of people in its west, to bring about more interaction between west and east, and at the same time to raise the level of development of the entire country.

Paragraph 2

C中国西部地区发展策略 **China's Western Region Development Strategy**

In 1999, the Chinese government publically announced its official plan to develop western China. Its goal is to try to achieve a satisfactory level of economic development in the western part of the country in a five-to ten-year time-frame and to establish a “new western China” by the middle of the 21st century. In its view, at the end of the period, all people in the region will enjoy economic prosperity, social stability, ethnic unity and an ecologically healthy and sustainable landscape. To achieve such results, China has already begun to speed up the building of extensive infrastructure projects in the western region. Water conservancy, energy, telecommunications and urban facilities have been placed at the top of the government's “Western Region Development Strategy” agenda.

So, the multi-billion dollar, multi-year western region development strategy is apparently being pursued with the idea in mind to erase existing political, economic, social and cultural cleavages between east and west. In addition to committing its own resources to this Herculean economic endeavor, Chinese leaders are seeking investment in their western develop-

ment plans from international sources such as the World Bank, the Asia Development Bank and international corporations such as the Ford Motor Company and various oil companies. As stated by a Ford Motor Company representative, the western provinces have the right conditions for foreign investment; abundant natural resources and cheap labor. In addition to financial support for this long-term development effort, the government is also seeking moral and political support. Each new foreign investment supplies some of that.

How best to manage economic and social development in the western region, however, is still at the heart of the "Western Region Development Strategy." For example, four major projects are currently envisioned: a south-to-north water diversion, a west-to-east natural gas transfer, a "West-to-east power transmission" and the construction of a Qinghai-Tibet Railway. These projects are being launched successively over the next five years. While this brings to mind the early days of Chinese communism and the development strategy of "man over nature," such as Mao Tse-tung's Great Leap Forward campaign of the late 1950s, today's Chinese government is paying at least some attention to environmental impacts. However, it is not yet clear to what extent the government will forego an economic prospect in the name of environmental protection, mitigation of the effects of desertification, or its contribution to human-induced global warming.

Paragraph 3

一些环境问题 Some Environmental Concerns

This generates great concern among some observers within China and, perhaps more vocally, outside the country, about the potential impacts on the environment and minority cultures in the west of these proposed massive infrastructure construction projects (e. g. , water diversion schemes and resulting population movements to the western region. . . and surely there will be more to come as components of the WRDS become fully implemented). Particularly troublesome is the fact that the Chinese bu-



reaucracy, a command-and-control decision-making structure, does not yet have experience in the undertaking of objective, scientifically based environmental impact assessments; nor has it taken full advantage of existing assessments carried out in similar ecological settings elsewhere around the globe.

Furthermore, each of the specific climatic and environmental problems listed earlier in this article is considered a “Creeping Environment Problem (CEP),” as defined by Glantz (1994; see also Glantz 1999). CEPs are those “changes that are imperceptible from one day to the next, but over some period of time they become noticeably worse. By then, however, attempts to address them have become more difficult as well as more costly.” Thus, the risk is that any government tendency to ignore CEPs in the short term might very likely have environmental and financial consequences that will eventually set back many short-term developmental gains.

Although there have been several studies on the CEPs in developed and developing countries (the United States, the Soviet Union, Vietnam, Brazil, Hungary), creeping environmental problems have not been studied in China. As a result, several of the above-mentioned environmental problems have not yet been successfully assessed or addressed in China. The overriding goal of dealing with CEPs is to identify potential thresholds of degradation (or more neutrally, environmental change) to enable the government to respond to them sooner than usual: that is, before the low-grade, slow-onset, long-term, cumulative environmental changes become crises.

Developing the western provinces will be a daunting task, and the Chinese authorities know it. The history of economic development efforts in many other countries as well as in China itself is strewn with scores of examples of development successes and failures, with the memories of the failures being much more enduring.

A 有关的一些建议 And Some Suggestions

At this early juncture in China's proposed escalation in western development activities, it is very important for its planners to pay attention to an ancient Chinese proverb: "To Know The Road Ahead, Ask Those Coming Back." Another adage that is relevant is as follows: "If you do not change your course, you will get where you are going." Thus, it is important, if not imperative, that planners take the time to seriously consider many of the potential obstacles they are likely to face and that could derail their western development goals. Only by learning from analogous past international as well as Chinese experiences of attempts at rapid economic development, especially in fragile environments, might China have a chance to avoid, in future decades, the debacles that were associated with such programs as the Great Leap Forward in the 1950s.

When you mention the western provinces to most Chinese people living in the east, the image that usually comes to mind is one of vast uninhabited lands, inhospitable mountains, arid lands and true deserts. Because of its spatial scale and the time proposed to fulfill it, the WRDS will play a significant role in the regional and global environmental changes. We emphasize this point because few people realize that several of the world's major rivers have their origins in the Tibetan-Qinghai plateau (the Mekong, Irrawadi, Ganges, Brahmaputra, Yangtze, Yellow rivers). Climatic, land use and/or desertification-related changes there are known to adversely affect the streamflow that in turn goes to meet the needs of about 3 billion people downstream.

As Chinese leaders set out to develop their country in the shortest time possible, it becomes extremely important that they trade experiences with other countries around the globe about: the costs, benefits and consequences of rapid development activities in arid and semi-arid areas; leap-frog development proposals; mega-development schemes; the impacts of



increasing affluence of various segments of their population; radical population shifts; the impacts caused by such major land-use changes on the environment in general; and, more specifically, on sustainable development in the western region over the long term.

Furthermore, they must consider the potential impacts of a human-induced climate change on all of these development activities and on changes in land use.

Much information about these issues already exists and it is crucial that government leaders assure that their agents in charge of developing the west understand the needs of the fragile western environments and of the region's inhabitants. In this way, they will be able to maximize the economic, social and environmental benefits that are likely to emerge as a result of a well planned Western Region Development Strategy.

Paragraph 5

T党中央的极度重视及正确引领 **The Central Authorities Have Paid Full Attention and Provided Correct Leadership**

The central authorities have paid full attention and provided correct leadership to ensure smooth going of the development drive.

Principal leaders of the Party and state have gone deep into western China to carry out investigations and study and provide guidance to local work. The State Council calls a meeting every year to discuss how to accelerate western China development and take major decisions, formulate policies and measures. The State Council has set up a leading group for western China development, which is made up of leaders of more than 20 ministries and commissions, with the Premier of the State Council as the leader and a vice-premier as the deputy leader. At the same time, the state has strengthened its support to the drive in planning, policy and investment.

Strengthening unified arrangements and planning and providing effective guidance so that the development drive forges ahead in an orderly manner. The Central government has mapped out the 10th five-year master

plan for western China development and given clear-cut guidelines, basic principles, development orientation, focus of work and other major arrangements. All functional departments of the State Council, including departments of water resources, communications, railways, civil aviation, agriculture, radio and TV broadcasting, land resources, education and health have mapped out their corresponding programs in support of the western China development drive, making the development plans more operable and ensuring all major tasks and targets well put in place in a planned manner, by steps and with emphasis.

Creating a good policy milieu and mapping out policies and measures in favor of the western China development drive. Over the past few years, the Chinese government has issued a series of important policy documents, including the Policies and Measures of the State Council on Implementing the Western China Development Drive, the Detailed Rules on the Implementation of the Western China Development Policies of the State Council transmitted by the General Office of the State Council, the Regulations on Returning Cultivated Land Reclaimed from Forests and the Proposals of the State Council on further promoting Western China Development. In these documents, the state has made it clear that the state will strengthen support to the western part of the country in investment, in improving investment climate, expanding opening up internally and externally, attracting and training personnel and developing science, technology and education. All departments and all areas, especially the western areas, have formulated their own policies and measures to match those formulated by the State Council in the light of their actual conditions.

Increasing investment in the western areas.

Over the past five years, the central finance has disbursed about 460 billion Yuan for construction purposes in western China. The State has also increased transfer payments to the area and appropriated 500 billion Yuan for improving public services in the area.



P西部大开发的进展与成就(1) **Progress and Achievements of** **Western China Development Drive(1)**

The economic growth in western China is accelerating and income of people is rising. In 2000—2004, the GDP in the region averaged an annual growth of 10.2%, narrowing the gap with the national average. The fixed assets investment in the region averaged an annual growth of 20%, far higher than the 7.4% before the development drive was launched. The per capita disposable income of urban residents increased by more than 2 000 Yuan as compared with 1999 and that of rural dwellers increased by more than 400 Yuan.

A number of key state and other major projects have been going on smoothly and the infrastructure and ecology in the region have improved significantly. By the end of 2005, the state had arranged 70 major projects in the region, with a total investment of nearly 1 000 billion Yuan. The west-to-east natural gas transmission project has been completed and put into commercial operation. The “West-to-east power transmission” project has delivered 10 million kW of electricity to Guangdong. The Qinghai-Tibet railway is nearing completion. More than 19.2 million hectares of cropland formerly reclaimed from forests have been returned and more than 19.3 million hectares of degenerated grassland have been brought under control. A number of other major projects have been unfolded, including water conservancy projects on the upper reaches of rivers, state highways, natural forest protection, sandstorm control, prevention and control of water pollution on the upper reaches of rivers, and air pollution control in central cities of the region. Many projects have been put into operation, beginning to yield economic, social and ecological results.

Greater efforts have been made in improving the infrastructure and social undertakings in the rural areas and the living and production conditions of farmers have been improved. Over the past five years, the region has



built 17 000 km of roads in poor counties and 26 000 km of tarmac roads leading to county towns and 46 000 km of inter-county roads are proceeding smoothly. With 969 more townships having the access to the use of electricity, 99% of the townships are now using electricity. More than 68 000 administrative villages have been brought into the coverage of radio and TV networks. The clean water projects have solved the problem of drinkable water for both man and animal. A number of large irrigation areas have been built, together with matching projects and water-efficient irrigation demonstrative projects, boosting the new water saving capacity by 4.6 billion cubic meters. Biogas pits have been built for about one million rural households. The more than 1.02 million people who used to live in ecologically fragile and unlivable areas have been resettled.

Paragraph 7

P西部大开发的进展与成就(2) **Progress and Achievements of** **Western China Development Drive(2)**

Investment increased in social development, rural education and health. Over the past five years, the state poured 15 billion Yuan into education projects in the region, mainly for use to rebuild dilapidated houses in rural middle and primary schools and support the infrastructure construction of regular senior high schools and major schools of higher learning. The state injected 6.5 billion Yuan into 839 projects for preventing and controlling diseases, 1 111 projects against epidemic outbreak, 149 blood supply centers and 141 blood banks at the county level and the purchase of more than 1 190 vehicles providing mobile services in family planning. At present, the disease prevention and control system and the medical rescue and control system in case of public health crisis have been completed.

Development of specialty industries has been accelerated and opening up to the outside world and east-west partnership have gained momentum. Over the past five years, speed has picked in the development of power, coal, petroleum, natural gas, non-ferrous metals, cotton, animal hus-



bandry and tourism as well as part of equipment manufacturing and new and high technology industries, with market shares increasing. The region had attracted an inflow of FDI amounting to more than US \$ 9 billion. This, plus the loans from international organizations and foreign governments, has brought the total amount of foreign investment actually used to nearly US \$ 15 billion. More than 10 000 enterprises from the eastern part of the country have invested more than 300 billion Yuan in the region.

The development drive has stimulated the home demand, thus boosting the strategic adjustment of the national economic development pattern. All the equipment and technologies needed to supply key projects come from the eastern and middle parts of the country, thus stimulating their industrial restructuring and increasing jobs in these regions. The western part has moved a large amount of energy and raw materials. All these have given a powerful support to the economic development of the eastern and middle parts of the country and enabled the national economy to maintain a steady and rapid growth.

Paragraph 8

D 全民族的发展(1) **Development of the People of All Ethnic Groups(1)**

Make the acceleration of development the central task. Development is the only way out for resolving all the problems. The first two decades of this century are a period of important strategic opportunities in China's modernization and a crucial period for accomplishment in the development drive. After five years of development, the conditions and environment for economic and social development in the region have much improved, preparing the basic conditions for accelerating development. We shall bring the comparative advantages of the region in vast area, large population, rich resources and geographical location to the full and bring the development level to a high plain. This requires our persistence in making the acceleration of economic development and social progress the central task. We

must learn to use all available favorable domestic and international environments to their best advantage to hasten the process of industrialization and urbanization and gradually turn the natural resources advantage and human resource advantage into economic advantage so as to bring the development drive into a new stage of development when the region will bootstrap itself.

Paragraph 9

D 全民族的发展(2)
Development of the
People of all Ethnic Groups(2)

Make the raising of living standards the fundamental aim. The starting and end points of the western China development drive is to satisfy the material and cultural demand of the people, which also serve as the main criteria for judging the success of the drive. In the national drive to build a well-off society that will benefit the more than one billion people, the emphasis and difficulties lie in the western part of the country and so do hope and potential. It is, therefore, essential to prioritize all work concerning agriculture, rural areas and farmers. We must try all means to increase the income of farmers and herdsmen, improve their production and living conditions and lift the poor population out of poverty. We must step up the development of basic education, public health, science and technology and culture and raise the level of public service. We must deepen the reform of state-owned enterprises and encourage the development of the non-public sector of the economy, open up new areas of industry, create more job opportunities and promote an orderly transfer of rural labor and stabilize employment. We must adopt a combination of measures to help and support the western region in developing their social security system so that all the people will benefit from reform and development.



D全民族的发展(3) **Development of the People of all Ethnic Groups(3)**

Apply the idea of over-all arrangements in actual work. All social undertakings including infrastructure, ecology, education and health have improved significantly in the western region. But it still lags behind other areas in urban and rural development. There is a big contradiction between economic development and ecological protection. The self-development capabilities are still lacking. And it is slow in attracting domestic and foreign investment. Improper solutions to these problems will seriously affect and hold back reform, opening up and development in the western region. It is, therefore, necessary to apply the idea of comprehensive, coordinated and sustainable development. We must, according to the requirements of the overall arrangements for urban and rural development, strengthen infrastructure construction and direct more attention to solving the problems of agriculture, rural areas and farmers (herdsmen); we must, according to the requirements of the overall arrangements for regional development, strengthen policy guidance, optimize the distribution of projects and handle well the relations in the development of economic belts, central cities and rural areas; we must, according to the requirements of the overall arrangements for an harmonious development between man and nature, strengthen the construction of ecological projects such as returning cultivated land once reclaimed from forests and grassland and consolidate what has been achieved; we must, according to the requirements of the overall arrangements for economic and social development, push forward the development of education, public health and other social undertakings so as to provide equal public services; we must, according to the overall arrangements for domestic development and opening to the outside world, deepen reform, renew ideas, improve the investment environment to attract and use both domestic and foreign investment, technology and management

experience by raising the level of opening up.

Paragraph 11

C中国西部开发计划 China's Western Development Program

A June 2000 report from U. S. Embassy Beijing

Summary: We visited three of China's western provinces, Gansu, Xinjiang, and Qinghai. A topic that inevitably arose in discussions with local officials was the new Great Western Development Initiative. Officials unanimously supported the new program; saying development of the impoverished western regions was long overdue. It was clear in the ensuing discussions, however, that few of the local leaders expected to receive substantial funding (although the definition of what qualified as substantial varied significantly from province to province). Instead, local officials all hoped that a combination of new policies, pressure from the central government on wealthier eastern provinces help their poorer cousins, expanded exploitation of natural resources, and modest central government funding devoted to transportation, and communications infrastructure, would gradually boost development in the western areas.

Paragraph 12

T西部大开发的新方案 The Great Western Development Initiative

Early this year the Chinese central government announced a major, new initiative to develop China's poor, backward western regions. The initial announcement led to a frenzy of activity as more and more provinces tried to define themselves as part of the "poor, backwards" western area in order to sup at the imagined huge public trough of central government largesse devoted to this project. Over the ensuing months, however, it has become clear to all that the cash-strapped central government doesn't have a large trough, perhaps just a few small buckets. It does plan to invest some resources in the development of transportation and communications



infrastructure, but the visions of large sums of money being tossed around recklessly are not likely to materialize.



Cultural Links 文化链接

西部大开发的意义是什么？

第一,实施西部大开发战略是实现我国现代化建设战略目标的必然要求。我国西部地区人均国内生产总值仅相当于全国水平的 67.8% 左右,尚未实现温饱的贫困人口大部分也分布于这一地区。如果不改变这种欠发达状况,将会拖延全国实现现代化的步伐。没有西部的现代化,全国的现代化就不完整。

第二,实施西部大开发战略是缩小地区差距,实现共同富裕的社会主义本质的要求。21 世纪初,在继续加快东部沿海地区经济发展的同时,实施西部开发战略,是促进东西部经济协调发展,逐步缩小东西部经济差距,最终实现共同富裕的目标。

第三,实施西部大开发战略是进一步扩大国内需求,保持国民经济持续快速健康发展的重要途径。西部地域广大,自然资源丰富,有巨大的发展潜力,也是一个巨大的潜在市场。开发西部,既可以为扩大国内需求提供巨大的潜在市场,创造大量的就业机会,又可以发展西部地区的特色经济,促进各种资源的合理配置和流动,形成国民经济持续发展的重要支持力量。

第四,实施西部大开发战略是全面贯彻实施可持续发展战略的重大举措。大力加强环境污染综合治理和加快改善生态环境是 21 世纪我国全面推进实施可持续发展战略的重要内容。西部地区是我国长江、黄河的发源地,其水资源的开发利用情况对于保证中下游地区水资源供应和防治洪涝灾害具有举足轻重的影响。在西部大开发中尽快遏制生态环境恶化趋势,不仅对西部,而且对改善全国生态环境,实施可持续发展战略,都具有不可替代的重要作用。

第五,实施西部大开发战略是保持稳定、民族团结和边疆安全的迫切要求。西部地区与周边十多个国家接壤,边境线长,聚居的少数民族比较集中。只有边疆民族地区的经济和社会发展了,各族人民生活水平不断提高,才能为加强民族团结和巩固边疆奠定坚实的物质和思想基础,

为全国的经济建设提供稳定的政治和社会环境。

第六,实施西部大开发战略是适应国内外经济结构调整的需要。世纪之交,经济结构和产业结构的大调整已在世界范围普遍展开。实施西部大开发,可以充分发挥西部地区市场潜力大、各种资源丰富和劳动力成本低的优势,为全国经济结构调整和产业结构优化,提供广阔的空间和新的市场。



Vocabulary

妙词连珠

domestic savings 国内储蓄	economic order quantity 经济定货量
gross domestic product 国内生产总值	underdeveloped area 不发达地区
internal revenue 国内税收	uneven development 不平衡发展
external assets 国外资产	forbidding locals to mine coal 不准地方挖煤
taking a turn for the better 好转	banning animal husbandry 不准放牧
cooperative economy 合作经济	financial subsidies 财政补贴
economic exploration 经济剥削	fiscal solvency 财政实力
economic parameter 经济参数	financial crisis 财政危机
economic responsibility system with contracted jobs 经济承包责任制	long-term foresight 长远意识



U 对外开放与交流

Unit 9 Open up and Foreign Trade



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. 11th Five-year Plan (2006—2010) for utilizing foreign investment and it states the policy priority will be given to the quality rather than quantity of such investments.
十一五期间(2006—2010)国家利用外资的政策将侧重质量而非数量。
2. The National Development and Reform Commission (NDRC) published the document on its website.
国家发展和改革委员会(发改委)在其网站上公布了这份文件。
3. This is the first time such a document has been published.
这是第一次有此类文件公布。
4. This is an important measure taken by.
这是一个重大举措。
5. It's important in creating a stable and transparent foreign investment management system as well as a fair and predictable policy environment, the NDRC said.
发改委强调了创建稳定、透明的外商投资管理体制,创建公平、稳定的政策环境的重要性。
6. According to the document, China utilized US \$ 383 billion of overseas investment during the 10th Five-year Plan period (2001—2005), including US \$ 286 billion in overseas direct investment, US \$ 38 billion in stock issuances and US \$ 46 billion in foreign loans.

这份文件表述了第十个五年计划期间(2001—2005 年),中国拥有海外投资 3830 亿美元,其中包括 286 亿美元的外国直接投资,380 亿美元的股票发行和 460 亿美元的外国贷款。

7. It criticizes some local governments for their blind efforts to secure foreign investments, some of which are apparently against the central government's industrial policy.

他们批评一些地方政府盲目努力争取外商投资,其中有些显然是与中央政府的产业政策相违背的。

8. This has adversely affected Chinese enterprises' capacity for independent innovations, it observes.

这已经严重影响我国企业的自主创新的能力。

9. China will push for further shifting of policy priority from the quantity to the quality of foreign investment during the next five years.

中国将进一步推动政策改革,在今后五年利用外资将从数量转移到质量。

10. Priority will be given to the introduction of advanced technologies, management expertise and high-quality talents rather than the use of foreign capital.

将优先引进先进技术、管理知识和高素质的人才,而不是单纯利用外资。

11. More emphasis shall also be given to the protection of the environment and efficient use of natural resources.

还应考虑更加重视保护环境和有效利用自然资源。

12. China's remote west and the northeast rust belt. They currently lag far behind the coastal regions in the amount of foreign investment.

中国西部及东北部偏远地区目前远远落后于沿海地区的外商投资额。

13. China will continue to encourage foreign investment in agriculture, electronics and information, petrochemicals, chemicals, automobiles and infrastructure.



中国将继续鼓励外商投资于农业、电子信息、石化、化工、汽车以及基础设施。

14. Foreign business will be encouraged to take part in the restructuring of traditional industries such as machinery, light industry, textile, raw materials and construction.

将鼓励外商参与传统产业的改组如机械、轻工、纺织、原材料及建筑方面。

15. China will speed up legislation and step up the supervision of sensitive acquisitions and takeovers to ensure critical industries and enterprises remain under Chinese control.

中国加快立法,加强监督,确保收购和兼并关键行业和企业 在宏观调控的掌握中。



Wonderful Paragraph

精彩片段

Paragraph 1

S经济特区与沿海开放城市(1) Special Economic Zones and Open Coastal Cities(1)

When it decided to reform the national economic setup in 1978, the Chinese government embarked on a policy of opening to the outside world in a planned way and step by step. Since 1980, China has established special economic zones in Shenzhen, Zhuhai and Shantou in Guangdong Province and Xiamen in Fujian Province, and designated the entire province of Hainan a special economic zone. In 1984, China further opened 14 coastal cities-Dalian, Qinhuangdao, Tianjin, Yantai, Qingdao, Lianyungang, Nan-tong, Shanghai, Ningbo, Wenzhou, Fuzhou, Guangzhou, Zhanjiang and Beihai-to overseas investment. Then, beginning in 1985, the state decided to expand the open coastal areas, extending the open economic zones of the Yangtze River Delta, Pearl River Delta, Xiamen-Zhangzhou-Quanzhou Triangle in south Fujian, Shandong Peninsula, Liaodong Peninsula, Hebei

and Guangxi into an open coastal belt. In 1990, the Chinese government decided to open the Pudong New Zone in Shanghai to overseas investment, and opened more cities in the Yangtze River valley. In this way, a chain of open cities extending up the Yangtze River valley, with Shanghai's Pudong as the "dragon head," has been formed. Since 1992, the State Council has opened a number of border cities, and in addition, opened all the capital cities of inland provinces and autonomous regions. In addition, 15 free trade zones, 32 state-level economic and technological development zones, and 53 new-and high-tech industrial development zones have been established in large and medium-sized cities. As a result, a multi-level, multi-channel, omni-directional and diversified pattern of opening, integrating coastal areas with riverine, border and inland areas has been formed in China. As these open areas adopt different preferential policies, they play the dual roles of "Windows" in developing the foreign-oriented economy, generating foreign exchanges through exporting products and importing advanced technologies and of "radiators" in accelerating inland economic development.

Paragraph 2

S经济特区与沿海开放城市(2) **Special Economic Zones and Open Coastal Cities(2)**

Primarily geared to exporting processed goods, the five special economic zones are foreign-oriented areas which integrate science and industry with trade, and benefit from preferential policies and special managerial systems. They have summed up their rich experiences in absorbing foreign investment and developing foreign trade for China to open up to the international market. In recent years, the special economic zones have led the country in establishing new systems, upgrading industries and opening wider to the outside world, serving as national models. In 1999, Shenzhen's new-and high-tech industry became one with best prospects, and the output value of new-and high-tech products reached 81.98 billion Yuan, making up 40.5 percent of the city's total industrial output value and coming



out in front in the country.

Since its founding in 1992, the Shanghai Pudong New Zone has made great progress in both absorbing foreign capital and accelerating the economic development of the Yangtze River valley. The state has extended special preferential policies to the Pudong New Zone that are not yet enjoyed by the special economic zones. For instance, in addition to the preferential policies of reducing or eliminating Customs duties and income tax, common to the economic and technological development zones and certain special economic zones, the state also permits the zone to allow foreign business people to open financial institutions, and run tertiary industries. In addition, the state has given Shanghai permission to set up a stock exchange, expand its examination and approval authority over investments and allow foreign-funded banks to engage in RMB business. In 1999, the GDP of the Pudong New Zone came to 80 billion Yuan, and the total industrial output value, 145 billion Yuan. Up to now, 78 Chinese and foreign-funded financial institutions have been set up in Lujiazui, Pudong, of which 24 foreign-funded banks have been approved to engage in RMB business. The 5,900 foreign-funded enterprises, with a total investment of nearly US \$ 30 billion, and over 5 000 domestic enterprises from all over the country, with a total registered capital of about 20 billion Yuan, have formed six pillar industries: automobiles and spare parts and components, microelectronics and computers, household electrical appliances, bio-medicines, and optical, mechanical and electrical products. A large number of projects funded by business people from more than 60 countries and regions have taken root and blossomed there. Pudong's "dragon-head" role of radiating and leading the whole country is becoming more and more prominent.

Paragraph 3

开放西部地区 **opening up West Region**

At the turn of the new century, while continuing to promote the opening up of the coastal regions, the Chinese government has begun to imple-



ment the strategy for the wide-ranging development of the western China. Western China includes Shaanxi, Gansu, Qinghai, Sichuan, Yunnan and Guizhou provinces, the Ningxia Hui, Xinjiang Uygur and Tibet autonomous regions, and Chongqing Municipality. Western China has an area of 5.4 million sq km, making up 56 percent of the country's total land territory; and a population of 285 million, accounting for 23 percent. Western China is rich in mineral resources, and has advantages in energy (including hydraulic power), tourism and land resources. In the 1980s, Deng Xiaoping put forward the strategic concept for China's modernization drive, featuring "two situations" (one situation is that the southeastern coastal areas will speed up their opening to the outside world, and the other is that China should concentrate its strength to speed up the development of its central and western regions). In the past 21 years, since the adoption of the policies of reform and opening to the outside world, the development of the coastal regions, especially the development of traditional industries, has gradually become saturated, so the coastal areas need to look for new markets. The development of western China is now extremely urgent. The implementation of the strategy for the development of western China, opening it wider to the outside world, and encouraging domestic and foreign enterprises to participate in the development of infrastructure facilities and natural resources in the region will benefit China's economic development in the 21st century. Hence the Chinese government is working out an overall plan for the development of the western region, and has formulated a series of preferential policies and measures for encouraging foreign business people to invest there. The Chinese government welcomes foreign investors to participate in the development of the country's western part.

Paragraph 4

F国外经济与技术合作 **Foreign Economic and Technological Cooperation**

Since the 1950s, China has provided economic aid to developing countries. Since the adoption of the policy of reform and opening to the outside



world, China has quickened its pace of foreign aid, involving agriculture, forestry, water conservancy, light industry, textiles, food, power, machinery, chemicals, transportation, culture, education, public health and public utility projects. Some of them are large and medium-sized, while others are small projects featuring less investment, but quick and high economic returns. By 1999, China had aided more than 130 countries and regions, and completed 1 500 foreign-aid projects.

Contracted projects and labor service cooperation with foreign countries are brand-new undertakings developed since the initiation of reform and opening to the outside world. To date, China has such undertakings in 187 countries and regions. In 1999, the contracted capital agreed to in newly signed contracts for overseas engineering projects or labor services reached 13 billion US dollars-worth; completed turnover amounted to 11.2 billion US dollars-worth; and more than 380 000 laborers had been sent abroad.

China has also made initial progress in making investments abroad. China has more than 160 foreign investment markets, and 5 793 investment enterprises outside Chinese territory. China's total agreed investments have come to 6.5 billion US dollars-worth. These overseas investment enterprises are engaged in a wide range of businesses, including foreign trade, real estate investment, information consultancy, finance, insurance, catering, tourism, contracting for labor services, culture, education, public health and technology development.

Paragraph 5

U利用外国资本 **utilizing Foreign Capital**

China absorbs foreign capital through foreign loans, direct foreign investment and other investment by foreign business people (international leasing, compensation trade, processing and assembling). So far, foreign business people from more than 170 countries and regions have made investments in China. Since the founding of the first Sino-foreign joint venture in 1980, China has taken the utilizing of foreign capital as an important as-



pect of basic state policy, and great efforts have been made to promote it. In the beginning Sino-foreign joint ventures first entered the processing industry, and later they expanded toward the basic industries and export-oriented enterprises, commerce, finance, information, consultation, real estate, and other fields.

Though most Sino-foreign enterprises are located in the coastal cities, some of them have gradually settled down in the inland cities. In recent years, thanks to the constant improvement of China's investment environment, some international consortiums and transnational companies have come to China, one after another. Of the 500 top transnational companies in the world, more than 300 have invested in China. Foreign investments have become an important capital source for China's economic construction. In 1999, direct foreign investments in real terms totaled 40.3 billion US dollars; and projects with direct foreign investment numbered 16 918. Between 1979 and 1999, of foreign capital utilized by China, the accumulative total of direct foreign investment came to 305.9 billion US dollars. By 1999, China had approved the founding of 342 000 foreign-funded enterprises, of which over 100 000 have gone into operation. Most of them have made satisfactory profits. Growth of Actually-used Foreign Capital.

Paragraph 6

F 对外贸易 (1) **Foreign Trade (1)**

Opening to the outside world has greatly promoted the development of China's foreign trade. China's import and export volume increased from 1.13 billion US dollars-worth in 1950 to 360.65 billion US dollars-worth in 1999, or an increase of 319 times. The total import and export volume in 1999 increased by 17.5 times, as compared with that in 1978. In terms of foreign trade, China ranked 32nd in the world in 1978, and rose to ninth in 1999.

Over the past 21 years, great changes have taken place in China's import and export trade. First, the structure of import and export commodities



has been constantly improved. The export volume of primary products, with food, agricultural and sideline products, and crude oil as the mainstay, has been reduced by a large margin—from 53.5 percent of the total export volume in 1978 to 10.2 percent in 1999; and the proportion of industrial products increased from 46.5 percent in 1978 to 89.8 percent in 1999. Remarkable progress has been achieved in the export of machinery and electrical products, rising from 1.41 billion US dollars-worth in 1980 to 77 billion US dollars-worth in 1999. Second, foreign-invested enterprises, which grew from nothing, have become new factors contributing to the growth of China's foreign trade. In 1981, the export volume of foreign-invested enterprises made up 0.1 percent of China's total export volume, and 0.5 percent of the import volume. By 1999, the export volume of foreign-invested enterprises made up 45.5 percent of China's total, and the import volume, 51.8 percent. Third, China's international trade market is becoming more diversified. In 1980, nearly 180 countries and regions had trade exchanges with China, a figure which rose to 228 in 1999. In 1999, along with the recovery of the Asian economy, China's exports to other Asian countries restored growth, and its exports to North America, Europe, Oceanic and Africa constantly grew. Fourth, foreign trade has been expanded through various flexible trading forms. Processing trade and small-scale border trade have increased by a large margin. A situation in which ordinary trade, processing and assembling with supplied or imported materials, and small-scale border trade are competing with each other for development has been formed.

Paragraph 7

F 对外贸易 (2) **Foreign Trade (2)**

While running the special economic zones, China has undertaken a series of reforms in the foreign trade system, such as expanding local governments' examination and approval authority over foreign trade and exports, and enlarging foreign trade enterprises autonomy over export trade



and operations. Consequently, the old system featuring monopolized operation by the state, highly centralized management, integration of government administration with enterprise operations and the state assuming responsibility for profits and losses has basically been changed: The state has gradually cut back on mandatory plans for foreign trade enterprises, and a management system which indirectly regulates and controls foreign trade through Customs duties, foreign exchange rates, credits and tax refunds has been put in place step by step.

In 1986 China formally applied for reinstatement as a signatory state in the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), so as to make its foreign trade conform more to international practice. Since the World Trade Organization (WTO) was founded in 1995, China continually applied to participate in it. During this period, China lowered its import tariff rates on several occasions and realized the convertibility of RMB in regular items. Over the past 14 years, China's enthusiasm for acceding to the WTO has never flagged and it has put its commitments into practice. That is to say, with its status as a developing country as the premise and the Uruguay round of negotiations as the basis, China undertakes its obligations suitable to its economic development level, actively strengthens negotiations with the United States, European Union and other member states. Bilateral and multilateral negotiations for China's entry into the WTO have reached the final stage. The day for China to join the WTO is not far away. Meanwhile, China actively participates in the activities sponsored by the Asian-Pacific Economic Cooperation Organization, and plays an important role in the organization. The bilateral trade relations between China and the United States, the European Union, Russia and Japan have been constantly strengthened.

Paragraph 8

F 对外政策 Foreign Policy

China pursues an independent and peaceful foreign policy directed toward peace. The basic objectives of this policy are to safeguard the inde-



pendence and sovereignty of the country, strive to create a long-standing and favorable international environment for China's reform, opening to the outside world and modernization drive, safeguard world peace and promote common development. China's independent and peaceful foreign policy has the following major components :

Adhering to independence. China decides on its approaches and policies regarding international issues independently. In international affairs, China shall decide its own stand according to the rights and wrongs of an affair, shall never yield to pressure from any big countries, and shall not form alliances with any major power or group of nations.

Safeguarding world peace. China shall neither take part in any arms race, nor engage in military expansion. China shall adhere to opposing hegemonism, power politics and aggressive expansion in any form; and adhere to opposing the infringement by any country on other countries' sovereignty and territorial integrity or interfering in other countries' internal affairs on the excuse of ethnic, religious or human rights issues.

Establishing friendly and cooperative relations. China is willing to establish and develop friendly and cooperative relations with all countries on the basis of the following five principles: mutual respect for sovereignty and territorial integrity, mutual non-aggression, non-interference in each other's internal affairs, equality and mutual benefit, and peaceful coexistence. China shall not decide its relations with other countries according to social or ideological systems.

Developing good-neighborly relations. China actively develops friendly relations with its surrounding countries, safeguards the peace and stability of the region, and promotes economic cooperation at the regional level. China maintains that the disputes concerning borders, territory and territorial waters left over by history be solved through dialogues and talks so as to seek fair and reasonable solutions. If a dispute cannot be solved right away, it may be put aside for the time being, and common ground be sought while reserving differences. An unsolved dispute should not affect normal relations between the relevant countries.



Strengthening unity and cooperation with developing countries. China has always taken it as the basis of its foreign policy to strengthen unity and cooperation with developing countries. China has consistently attached great importance to developing all-round friendly and cooperative relations with the Third World countries, actively seeking mutually complementary economic, trade, scientific and technological cooperative channels, strengthening consultation and cooperation with them on international issues, and jointly safeguarding the rights and interests of developing countries.

Opening to the outside world. China opens to developed countries as well as to developing countries. On the basis of equality and mutual benefit, China actively conducts extensive international cooperation to promote common development. As the largest developing country in the world and a permanent member of the UN Security Council, China is willing to make unremitting efforts for world peace and development, and the establishment of a new peaceful, stable, fair and reasonable international political and economic order.

Paragraph 9

P管理原则 Principles of Governing

With the inauguration of the PRC on October 1, 1949, the Chinese government declared solemnly: "This government is the sole legal government representing the people of the People's Republic of China. It is ready to establish diplomatic relations with all foreign governments which are willing to observe the principles of equality, mutual benefit and respect for each other's territorial integrity and sovereignty." There is only one China in the world. Taiwan Province is an integral part of the territory of the PRC. Any country seeking to establish diplomatic relations with China must show its readiness to sever all diplomatic relations with the Taiwan authorities and recognize the government of the PRC as the sole legal government of China. The Chinese government will never tolerate any country scheming to create "two Chinas" or "one China, one Taiwan"; nor will it tolerate any



moves on the part of countries having formal diplomatic relations with China to establish any form of official relations with the Taiwan authorities.

Paragraph 10

F外贸机构 **Foreign Affairs Organizations**

China's major foreign affairs organizations : The Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the PRC. This governmental unit is in charge of relations with other countries and consular affairs. There are foreign affairs offices in each province, autonomous region and municipality directly under the Central Government, responsible for handling foreign affairs in those localities under the leadership of the Foreign Ministry. The Ministry of Foreign Affairs has set up offices of special commissioners in the special administrative regions. Such offices shall handle foreign affairs managed by the Central Government and related to special administrative regions, and serve as the channels between the special administrative regional governments and the Central Government on such foreign affairs.

The Chinese People's Association for Friendship with Foreign Countries was founded in May 1954, this organization's sole purpose is the promotion of friendship and mutual understanding between the Chinese people and other peoples throughout the world. Representing the Chinese people, it makes contacts and promotes exchanges with friendly organizations and people all over the globe. This work allows it to serve as a link in the friendly relations between the Chinese people and the people of the rest of the world. The Association has branches in all the provinces and autonomous regions.

Chinese People's Institute of Foreign Affairs was founded in December 1949, this organization focuses on international issues and foreign policy research, aiming to conduct international exchanges and expand people-to-people diplomatic activities, thus working to enhance mutual understanding and friendship between the Chinese people and the people of other nations, promote the development of China's international relations and con-



tribute to the cause of world peace. This institute works to establish contacts with political activists, diplomats and other distinguished individuals in other countries, along with organizations and scholars researching international issues. It organizes and participates in a variety of public lectures and symposiums on academic subjects and various other activities geared to the exploration of international affairs and exchanges of ideas.

Paragraph 11

D 对外关系的发展 Development of Foreign Relations

Acting in accordance with the above-mentioned principles, China established diplomatic relations with 19 countries in the 19 months between October 1949 and May 1951. Between the second half of the 1950s and the late 1960s, a large number of newly independent nations established diplomatic relations with China. By the end of 1969, the countries having diplomatic relations with China had increased to 50. In the 1970s, the door was opened, allowing normal relations between China and the United States, and China's legitimate seat in the United Nations and the Security Council was restored. These developments allowed China's foreign relations to enter a new stage. Japan, the United States and other Western countries joined a great number of Third World countries in establishing diplomatic relations with China, raising the total number of countries having diplomatic relations with China to 121 by the end of 1979. In the 1980s, even more countries in Asia, Africa, Latin America and Oceania established diplomatic relations with China. Since the beginning of the 1990s, China has established diplomatic relations with still more countries, such as Israel, the Republic of Korea and South Africa, as well as with the newly independent republics that emerged from the former Soviet Union. By the end of 2006, 195 countries had diplomatic relations with China.



中非合作论坛后续行动——“中国经济日”在多哥开幕

由中国和西非开发银行(简称西非行)联合举办的“中国经济日”研讨会 2006 年 11 月 22 日在多哥首都洛美正式举行。多哥总理阿博伊博、西非行代理行长库利巴利和中国代表团团长、中国人民银行行长助理马德伦分别在当天的开幕仪式上致词。

阿博伊博总理在讲话中对西非行和中国在西非举办“中国经济日”的创举表示高兴,并相信这次会议的成果将有助于进一步加强和发展中国与西非经济货币联盟国家之间的互利合作。

他说,“根据本月初在北京举行的中非合作论坛时各方再次表明的共同关切,我不怀疑”这次活动将有利于双方加强在经贸、文化和社会等多个领域的合作关系。

西非行代理行长库利巴利指出,中国加入西非行后,为了扩大两年前开始的富有成果的合作,西非行和中国密切合作,决定举办“中国经济日”活动,其主要目的是进一步发展中国和西非经济货币联盟国家之间的互利伙伴关系,并通过中国的直接投资向次地区转让技术。

中国人民银行行长助理马德伦说,非洲需要中国,中国离不开非洲。中国作为世界上最大的发展中国家,非洲作为发展中国家最集中的大陆,双方有着共同的利益和共同的关切。他还说,中国与西非经济互补性强,合作潜力巨大。西非行是一个重要的多边开发型金融机构,在落实千年发展目标、促进西非区域一体化进程中发挥着重要的作用。

“中国经济日”活动是在 11 月初中非合作论坛北京峰会后的一次后续行动,此次研讨会期间将探讨中国与西非经济货币联盟国家的双边合作以及西非经贸投资环境及区域发展规划等议题,对扩大中国在西非地区的影响,进一步加强中国与西非行及其成员国的合作关系有着重要意义。

中国人民银行、外交部、商务部及中资企业代表约 100 人,多哥政府官员、西非经济货币联盟委员会、西非国家中央银行以及西非开发银行成员国政府及企业代表等约 500 人出席了当天的会议。

 Vocabulary
妙词连珠

frontier trade 边境贸易	mutual exchange of needed products 互通有无
compensation trade 补偿贸易	renewing business relations 恢复业务往来
trade of unequal values 不等价贸易	foreign trade on consignment 寄售方式的对外贸易
excess of exports 出超	indirect export 间接出口
export trade 出口贸易	indirect transit trade 间接过境贸易
earning foreign exchange 创外汇	indirect import 间接进口
vertical trade 垂直贸易	indirect trade 间接贸易
unilateral export 单边出口	indirect barter 间接易货
unilateral import 单边进口	establishing regular trade relation 建立经常贸易关系
trade of equal values 等价贸易	import and export trade 进出口贸易
external trade 对外贸易	import trade 进口贸易
foreign trade multiplier 对外贸易乘数	net-export 净出口
international settlements in connection with foreign trade 对外贸易的国际结算	net-import 净进口
value of foreign trade 对外贸易额	trade between the two countries 两国间的贸易
foreign trade modes 对外贸易方式	trade safe-guarding act 贸易保护法
foreign trade relations 对外贸易关系	trade barrier 贸易壁垒
physical volume of foreign trade 对外贸易量	trade balance 贸易差额
foreign trade prospects 对外贸易前景	trade deficits 贸易赤字
foreign trade channel 对外贸易渠道	trade drive 贸易促进
favorable balance of trade export duties 对外贸易顺差	facilitation of trade documentation 贸易单据简化
transit trade 过境贸易	trade partners 贸易对象



U “十一五”计划

Unit 10 The 11th Five-Year Plan



Key Sentences

流畅精句

1. Increasing annual grain production to 500 million tons and keeping agricultural incomes increasing at an annual rate of five percent over the next five years in proposed by.
中国政府提出在未来 5 年内全国粮食产量增加 500 万吨,保持农业收入年均增长 5%。
2. The Ministry of Agriculture published its 11th Five Year Plan for agricultural development stating the goals of efficient distribution, continued increases in farm incomes and harmonious rural development.
农业部公布其对十一五期间农业发展目标的有效配置进行说明,继续增加农民收入和农村和谐发展。
3. The plan emphasizes the need to curb the widening disparity between rural and urban areas by developing plant farming and urban migration.
该计划强调必须遏止城乡差距拉大,发展种植业和农村城镇化。
4. Every year rural enterprises will aim to create 2.5 million jobs and 5 million farmers will find new jobs in cities.
乡镇企业每年将创造 250 万个职位,并且 500 万农民将在城市找到工作岗位。
5. China's economic and social development face a lot of good opportunities.
中国的经济和社会发展有很多机会。

6. The output of cotton is predicted to reach 6.8 million tons, kitchen oil 32 million tons and sugar crops 120 million tons.
棉花产量可望达到 680 万吨, 食用油 3200 万吨、糖料 120 万吨。
7. The plan aims to upgrade the agriculture structure with livestock accounting for 50 percent of the total output value and further development of the processing industries.
该计划旨在改善农业结构, 畜牧业将占总产值的 50%, 并进一步发展加工业。
8. New materials: building demonstration projects for commercial production of high performance new materials badly needed in information, biological and aerospace industries.
新原料包括: 建设示范工程所需原料, 为商业生产高性能新型材料急需的信息、生物和航天工业的原料。
9. Build new socialist rural areas, optimize and upgrade industrial structures, promote concordant development of regions, build a conservation-minded and environment-friendly society, further system reform and enhance opening-up, efficiently practice strategies to invigorate China through science and education and through human resource development, and give impetus to constructing a socialist harmonious society.
建设社会主义新农村、产业结构优化升级, 促进区域和谐发展, 建设节约型、环保型社会, 进一步改革和加强制度开放, 实践有效振兴战略和科教兴国, 通过人力资源开发, 带动构建社会主义和谐社会。
10. Recently, it was reported that during the 11th Five-Year Plan period (2006—2010), the country's estimated investment in environmental protection will reach 1 375 billion Yuan (US \$ 169.5 billion), accounting for 1.6 percent of the output of the national economy.
最近, 据报道, 在第十一个五年计划期间 (2006 至 2010 年) 我国环保投资预计将达到 13 750 亿元人民币 (1 695 亿美元), 经济总量增加 16%。



11. That means the country will double its total expenditure on protecting the environment in the coming five years.
这意味着在未来 5 年内我国的保护环境总开支将增加 1 倍。
12. In the past more than two decades, fast economic growth has substantially raised the living standards of the masses.
在过去的 20 多年,经济发展快,大大提高了人民群众的生活水平。
13. Only by building an environmentally friendly society can China sustain its long-term economic progress and the continuous improvement of people's standard of living.
只有建立一个环保的和谐社会,中国才能维持长期的经济进步和不断提高人民生活水平。
14. The problem is, by comparison, funds allocated for rural environmental protection are too little.
问题是,相比之下,投向农村环境保护的资金是太少了。
15. The country is working hard to narrow the widening urban-rural development gap.
我国正努力缩小城乡发展差距。



Wonderful Paragraph 精彩片段

Paragraph 1

K 十一五计划的要点 Key Points of the 11th Five-Year Plan

At a press conference in Beijing on Monday, Ma Kai, minister of the National Development and Reform Commission (NDRC), highlighted some of the key points of interest of the 11th Five-Year Guidelines (2006—2010), which is now under discussion during the ongoing Fourth Plenary Session of the 10th National People's Congress (NPC).

Minister Ma stressed that the Guidelines not only follow in the spirit of previous five-year plans, they have been developed in line with the current



situation. The following are the key points raised by Ma.

They adopt the strategic concepts of the “Scientific Approach to Development” and “Constructing a Harmonious Socialist Society.”

The goals set in the Guidelines reflect a keener attention to the issues of humanity, society and the environment, as well as the economy. And for the first time, the development index has been set to “expected” and “restricted to”.

A primary goal set out in the Guidelines is the building of a new socialist countryside.

Although the structure of industry must be further developed and strengthened, the focus is on strength, not scale.

Also for the first time, efforts are to be made to strengthen the service industries. This is as a result of weakly developed tertiary industry, which has had a negative impact on the overall structure of industry, job opportunities and comprehensive competitiveness.

The Guidelines also clearly define the concepts of optimized development, key development, restrictive development and forbidden development.

With regard to the relationship between man and the environment, the Guidelines include two of the basic national policies, namely energy-saving and environmental protection.

Self-innovation and the training of talent are also prominent in the Guidelines.

The Guidelines relate not only to development but also to reform. Two chapters are devoted to the aims of both further reform and opening up. In addition, specific areas of reform are expounded in separate chapters on rural development, science and education undertakings as well as the construction of a harmonious society.



官方列举的有利因素 **Official Lists Favorable Factors**

China's economic and social development face a lot of good opportunities and favorable conditions in the 11th Five-Year Guidelines period (2006—2010), an official said Thursday.

Xu Lin, deputy director of the Development Plan Bureau under the State Development and Reform Commission (SDRC), made the remark at the sixth donation coordination meeting on development cooperation.

In the next five years, the advantage of sufficient labor supply and a high saving rate can still be maintained in China, and the upgrading and diversification of domestic consumption will create a huge domestic demand, Xu acknowledged.

The accelerated urbanization process will further stimulate economic growth, and the enhanced industrial technology progress will improve the competitiveness of the whole economy, he said.

Moreover, he added, the integration of the domestic and global economy will expand the frontier of resource allocation and create still greater space for China's economic growth.

The enhanced institutional reform will go on liberalizing the market entities, make the market more transparent and foreseeable, which will further improve the efficiency of the resource allocation, he said.

Nevertheless, he listed some unfavorable factors, such as the emerging bottleneck of the main natural resource supply, environmental pollution, increased social conflicts, the shortage of skilled labor force and an aging population structure.

The main tasks for the new 11th Five-Year Guidelines include maintaining relatively high economic growth, speeding up rural development, narrowing the rural-urban gap, adjusting the industrial structure, enhancing the service sectors, coordinating regional development, building a resource-conservation and environment-friendly society, improving capacity of

innovation and deepening institutional reform, Xu said.

Paragraph 3

F处理老龄化社会问题的五年计划 **Five-Year Plan to Cope with Pressures of Aging Society**

China plans to boost social welfare and medical services for its senior citizens as pressures of coping with an aging population increase.

A national program on the aging population for the 11th Five-Year Plan period (2006—2010) was issued by the China National Committee on Aging with the approval of the State Council on Thursday.

Li Bengong, a senior official with the committee, said that although welfare payments and medical subsidies for retired people have been significantly increased over the past five years, demand has increased even more.

China's elderly population is expected to hit 174 million, or 12.78 percent of its entire population, by 2010, a big increase from the current figure of 143 million.

According to the program, China will integrate more seniors in poor areas into the rural cooperative medical care system and the old-age pension system, and is committed to solving problems for retired people with financial difficulties.

The pressure of the aging population in rural areas is very noticeable. About 85.57 million old people in rural areas, 65.82 percent of the country's total, are not covered under the country's social welfare system, nor do they have pensions or adequate medical care.

China plans to increase the number of beds in homes for the elderly by 800,000 in the cities and by 2.2 million in rural areas over the next five years.

At present, China has 380,000 homes for the elderly with 1.2 million beds. This means that 1,000 elderly people compete for 8.6 beds, far less than the average 50 to 70 beds in developed countries.

Under the program, governments at various levels are required to in-



crease financial support for infrastructure projects for elderly people, as well as cultural and educational activities.

By 2010, 10 000 more seniors' colleges and schools will be built.

The central government will also encourage domestic private enterprises and foreign capital to invest in services for the elderly so as to optimize and diversify its investment structure.

Paragraph 4

B 促进文化的发展 Boosting Cultural Development

In China's elementary schools as part of a government drive to bring culture to youngsters classes on calligraphy, painting and traditional handicrafts are to be part of the educational curriculum. And museums and art galleries will also be free of charge or offer discounts to school pupils.

“On the international stage China not only needs strength in economy, science, technology and defense but also cultural strength to be ahead of international competition,” states the national program on cultural development during the 11th Five-Year Plan period (2006—2010) published on Wednesday.

The General Office of the Communist Party of China Central Committee and the General Office of the State Council, which jointly issued the program, also published a circular instructing all localities and departments to carry out the program.

According to the program the government will increase investment in cultural projects, reform the way they operate, expand the quantity and quality of cultural products and services to meet the rising demand and increase the global competitiveness of Chinese cultural merchandize. The program also states that museum storage space will be expanded by 300 000 square meters.

It asks state-owned art performance troupes and theaters to produce shows at lower costs to allow those on low-incomes to attend and calls on urban organizations and residents to donate televisions, radios, comput-

ers, books and audio and video products for use by farmers.

There's also a call for online libraries and theaters and a system to provide distance learning of cultural subjects. It orders the enhancement of intellectual property rights protection and efforts to curb piracy.

It says that cultural exchanges with the rest of the world must be increased to improve an understanding of China overseas. In addition to promoting visits and exchanges between cities and holding cultural activities abroad it proposes the promotion of Chinese cultural products and services through well regarded overseas film, television and art festivals, book fairs and expositions.

It calls for an adjustment to the style of radio and television productions to meet the demands and tastes of overseas listeners and viewers.

Paragraph 5

**C 中国计划到 2010 年把商品交
易额提高到 2.3 万亿美元
China to Raise Trade Volume
in Goods to US \$2.3 Trillion by 2010**

China will increase its total volume of trade in goods and services to US \$2.3 trillion and US \$400 billion respectively by the year 2010, according to an official document.

Efforts must be made to enable China "participate in international economic and technological cooperation and competition in a larger and more profound way," read the for the 11th Five-Year Guidelines for National Economic and Social Development (2006—2010), which are being discussed at the Fourth Session of the 10th National People's Congress (NPC).

China's import and export volume totaled US \$1.42 trillion in 2005, registering a 23.2 percent year-on-year increase. Total foreign direct investment actually used reached US \$60.3 billion, and the country's foreign exchange reserves totaled US \$818.9 billion at the end of 2005, Premier Wen Jiabao said when delivering a report on the government work at the opening of the annual session of the NPC on Sunday.



The total import and export volume tripled over the past five years, and the amount of foreign direct investment actually used came to US \$ 274.08 billion, Wen said.

“We must lay stress on the quality of foreign investment utilization, and give priority to introducing advanced technologies and managerial expertise and special talented people by way of using foreign investment,” says the document.

Paragraph 6

**关于 2006 年—2010 年
中国的主要运输设施计划
China's Key Transport
Infrastructure Projects for 2006—2010**

The following are the key transport infrastructure projects China is set to build during the 2006—2010 period, listed in the draft guidelines of the five-year development blueprint being deliberated by Chinese lawmakers at their ongoing annual session:

Railway: six railways for passenger transportation, including one between Beijing and Shanghai; five inter-city railways, including one between Beijing and Tianjin; and the upgrading of five existing railways including one between Datong and Qinhuangdao.

Highway: 14 expressways including one from Beijing to Hong Kong and Macao.

Port: transit systems for the transportation of coal and imported oil, gas and iron ore, and containers transport systems at 12 seaports including those in Dalian, Tianjin and Shanghai; coal transit and storage bases in eastern and southern China.

Shipping: the third-phase project for dredging the deepwater channel at the mouth of the Yangtze River, the course at the mouth of the Pearl River to the sea, channel dredging in the Yangtze and Pearl River valleys and the Beijing-Hangzhou Canal; and acceleration of port construction along inland rivers.



Airport: expansion of ten airports including those in Beijing, Shanghai and Guangzhou; relocation of the two airports in Kunming and Hefei; and airports in central, western and northeastern China to accommodate flights on feeder lines.

Paragraph 7

M2006 年—2010 年计划的主要高科技项目 **Major High-tech Projects Planned for 2006—2010**

The following are the major high-tech projects China is set to undertake during the 2006—2010 period, listed in the draft guidelines of the five-year development guidelines being deliberated by Chinese lawmakers at their ongoing annual session:

Integrated circuits and software: establishing integrated circuit research and development centers, industrializing the technology for 90—nanometer and smaller integrated circuits, and developing basic software, middle-ware, large key applied software and integrated systems.

New-generation network: building next-general Internet demonstration projects, a nationwide digital TV network and mobile communication demonstration networks with independent property rights.

Advanced computing: making breakthrough in technology for computer systems, building grid-based advanced computing platforms, and commercializing the production of teraflop computers.

Biomedicine: Building a number of demonstration projects for commercial production of vaccines for major diseases and gene-modified medicines, improving the modern traditional Chinese medicine system, and enhancing the capability for new medicine invention and production.

Civil airplane: developing planes for trunk and feeder lines, general-purpose planes and helicopters, as well as advanced engines.

Satellite application: developing new meteorological, oceanographic, resource and telecommunication satellites, and poison-and pollution-free thrust augmented carrier rockets; building earth observation and navigation positioning satellite systems and facilities and application demonstration



projects for civil satellite ground systems.

New materials: building demonstration projects for commercial production of high-performance new materials badly needed in information, biological and aerospace industries.

Paragraph 8

C增加教育经费 China to Raise Education Expenditures

China will increase financial input for education in the coming five years and gradually raise the proportion of annual government education expenditures to 4 percent of the gross domestic product GDP according to an official document seen Monday.

It should be made clear that governments at all levels have the responsibility to provide public education, as well as support the development of the private education sector, “read the Guidelines for the 11th Five-Year Guidelines for National Economic and Social Development, which are being discussed at the annual full session of the Chinese parliament, the National People’s Congress.

According to statistics from the Ministry of Education, the proportion of China’s government education expenditures to the GDP stood at 3.41 percent in 2002, up from 2.55 percent in 1998.

We must implement the strategy of reinvigorating China with science and technology and improving China’s national strength with skilled personnel, . . . and work hard to build an innovation-based country and a country with human resources advantages,” says the document.

A major task for the country’s education is to promote and consolidate the nine-year compulsory education, especially in the vast countryside, according to the guidelines.

In his cabinet work report delivered at the just-opened parliament session on Sunday, Chinese Premier Wen Jiabao pledged that the government would eliminate all charges on rural students receiving nine-year compulsory education before the end of 2007.

The new policy, which requires an additional 218.2 billion yuan (US \$ 27.27 billion) in the central government budget expenditures over the next five years, is expected to benefit some 160 million school-age children in the rural regions, who account for nearly 80 percent of the country's primary and junior middle school students.

Paragraph 9

N新政策强调国外投资的优劣 **ew Policy Stresses Quality of Foreign Investment**

China on Thursday published its 11th Five-year Plan (2006—2010) for utilizing foreign investment and it states the policy priority will be given to the quality rather than quantity of such investments.

The National Development and Reform Commission (NDRC) published the document on its website. This is the first time such a document has been published.

“This is an important measure taken by China in creating a stable and transparent foreign investment management system as well as a fair and predictable policy environment,” the NDRC said.

According to the document, China utilized US \$ 383 billion of overseas investment during the 10th Five-year Plan period (2001—2005), including US \$ 286 billion in overseas direct investment, US \$ 38 billion in stock issuances and US \$ 46 billion in foreign loans.

It criticizes some local governments for their blind efforts to secure foreign investments, some of which are apparently against the central government's industrial policy.

The document notes that emerging monopolies by foreign businesses in certain industries are posing a potential threat to China's economic security.

It also criticizes foreign businesses for abusing intellectual property rights protection laws. This has adversely affected Chinese enterprises' capacity for independent innovations, it observes.

The document says China will push for further shifting of policy priority



from the quantity to the quality of foreign investment during the next five years.

Priority will be given to the introduction of advanced technologies, management expertise and high-quality talents rather than the use of foreign capital, the document says.

More emphasis shall also be given to the protection of the environment and efficient use of natural resources, it states.

The document stresses the need for more foreign investment in areas such as research and development as well as sophisticated design so China could eventually become a major manufacturer of high value-added products.

Foreign investment in environment protection, including the control of water and air pollution and recycling will be welcomed, the document states.

In the service sector the document says China will fulfill its duties under the World Trade Organization and open its banking, insurance, securities and telecommunications sectors to foreign investment in a positive and prudent manner.

In response to the rising concern over foreign acquisitions of leading Chinese firms in critical sectors, the document says China will speed up legislation and step up the supervision of sensitive acquisitions and takeovers to ensure critical industries and enterprises remain under Chinese control.

Paragraph 10

M为老年人提供更多的学校、公园和疗养院 **More Schools, Parks, Nursing Homes for Senior Citizens**

China will invest more on infrastructure to serve its senior citizens as preparation for the coming peak in ageing, expected to appear around 2030, an official document said.

According to the 11th Five-Year Plan for the Aged Population (2006—2010) promulgated by the China National Committee on Ageing and approved by the State Council on September 21, elderly people will enjoy im-



proved services in the coming five years.

The plan says 10 000 more senior citizens' universities and schools will be established across the country by 2010.

Cultural and recreational places such as parks, museums, exhibition halls and libraries will provide more services, free or discounted, to senior citizens.

Li Bengong, executive vice chairman of the committee, said 2.2 million and 800 000 nursing homes beds would be added in rural and urban areas respectively by 2010.

Statistics provided by the committee show that 5 percent of elderly people in the country want to live in nursing homes but the number of beds limits the proportion to just 0.84 percent.

Li said China will both allocate and raise more money to build a social security system for the elderly. It will also provide more facilities for them.

In urban areas, the poor elderly population will be included into the lowest life guarantee system, enabling them to receive regular life allowances.

In rural areas, the system of aiding destitute families will be improved to provide regular relief funds to poor elderly farmers who have lost their ability to work.

The plan stresses the importance of governmental policies to promote the development of an "elderly people industry."

Private and foreign capital will be encouraged to establish various institutions and companies to serve senior citizens, such as in the fields of medicine, medical service and appliances, entertainment, tourism agencies, finance, assurance, psychiatric consultation, legal service and nursing homes.

The plan requires that a special job market be built to exploit the valuable human resources represented by talented elderly people.

A national database of talented senior citizens will be created, according to the plan.

China has now an aged population (aged 60 or above) of 143 million,



representing 11 percent of the total population.

The committee predicts that the number will rise to 174 million in 2010, accounting for 12.78 percent of the total population.

Paragraph 11

L 龙潭水力发电厂开始储备水源 **Longtan Hydropower Plant Begins Water Storage**

The reservoir of the Longtan hydropower project, China's third largest hydroelectric plant, began storing water on Saturday when four sluice gates were lowered to stop the flow of the Hongshui River.

The project is a key component of the government's campaign to develop the western regions and to bring electricity to the economically developed, but energy-demanding eastern and coastal areas.

The water storage would enable the project to begin generating next May, two months ahead of schedule, said Dai Bo, general manager of Longtan Hydropower Development Co. of China Datang Corporation (CDT).

It would take eight to 18 days to raise the water level in the reservoir from 215 to 290.5 meters, and the level would rise to 375 meters in August 2009, said Zhong Jun, chairman of Longtan Hydropower Development, in charge of the water storage process.

The process would have no effect further down the Pearl River because another downstream hydropower project would increase the water discharge, said deputy general manager Long Xianjin.

Chu Yueting, another general manager, said the company had worked out countermeasures to possible problems, including earthquakes, silting and pollution.

Located in northwest Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region, the Longtan project lies on the Honghe River, a major tributary of the Pearl River. It is China's third largest after the Three Gorges Project on the middle reaches of the Yangtze River, and Xiluodu hydropower project on Jinsha River, a tributary of the Yangtze.

Longtan hydropower project is just one of the many water control facilities being constructed in west China.

Ma Hongqi, a hydroelectric specialist and a member of the Chinese Academy of Engineering, said China was at a construction peak in hydro-power projects, most of which are being built in west China, during the 11th Five-Year Plan period (2006—2010) and would experience another peak from 2012 to 2016 when many of the projects would begin generating.

China boasts 540 million kW of exploitable hydro-electric resources, most of which are concentrated on rivers in west China. Only 24 percent of the country's hydro-electric resources are utilized.

The country will have the world's highest capacity of hydroelectric plants at 125 million kW by 2010, accounting for 19 percent of national capacity. Total installed capacity was 508 million kW last year.

By 2010, 40 percent of the country's hydroelectric resources will be utilized, said Ma.

Paragraph 12

F合理对待环境问题 **air Treatment to Environmental Issues**

Judging from the swelling investment pumped into related projects, China has grasped more thoroughly than ever the urgency of environmental protection.

Recently, it was reported that during the 11th Five-Year Plan period (2006—2010), the country's estimated investment in environmental protection will reach 1,375 billion yuan (US \$169.5 billion), accounting for 1.6 percent of the output of the national economy.

That means the country will double its total expenditure on protecting the environment in the coming five years.

In the past more than two decades, fast economic growth has substantially raised the living standards of the masses. More and more Chinese people, especially those in urban areas, are complaining about the deteriorating environment.



Widespread air pollution and water shortages have made urban life less pleasant than robust economic growth originally promised.

It is good news that the Chinese authorities have finally decided to spend so much on improving the environment.

Emerging environmental restraints have already given warning that the country can no longer blindly put economic growth above all else.

Only by building an environmentally friendly society can China sustain its long-term economic progress and the continuous improvement of people's standard of living.

To this end, increased investment is an absolute must.

Without adequate input, the ongoing trend of environmental deterioration will not be stopped, let alone reversed, and cleaner air and water will be unobtainable.

However, investment alone is not sufficient to address many of the country's environment-related problems.

If the increased supply of funds cannot be fairly distributed between rural and urban areas, the unprecedented environmental campaign is unlikely to make any significant improvement to the country's ecology.

Currently, energy-and-resources-consuming cities have largely based their prosperity on surrounding poorer rural areas, which are caught between environmental vulnerability and economic backwardness.

A recent report in the Beijing News revealed the quagmire of Chicheng, a county in Hebei Province on the border with Beijing. As a key water source for the capital, the small county has had to reduce local economic activities to save water to meet the demands of the ever-thirsty Beijing. But compensation from Beijing is a fraction of what it should have been.

Paragraph 13

W温: 2006—2010 年, 以“积极稳妥”为指导方针
en: 2006—2010 Guidelines “Active and Prudent”

Premier Wen Jiabao has described the country's goal of doubling its year 2000 per capita gross domestic product (GDP) figure by 2010 as “ac-



tive and prudent.”

The goal is based on an overall consideration of economic performance from 2001 to 2005 and conditions for development in the coming five years, he said in his explanation, released yesterday, on a proposal on the 11th Five-Year Guidelines at the Fifth Session of the 16th Communist Party of China Central Committee last week.

The plan draws up the nation's 2006—2010 economic and social blueprint.

Wen described the goal of reducing energy costs per unit GDP by 20 percent in the coming five years as “achievable.”

This reflects the requirement for the building of an energy-saving and environmentally-friendly society and sustainable development, he said.

Wen acknowledged that in recent years, the speed of energy consumption was faster than economic growth, showing that there is still much potential for saving energy and raising the efficiency of energy use.

China's economy expanded at 9.5 percent in the first half of the year and is widely expected to see only a slight slowdown in 2006.

But the economy, Wen warned, rides excessively on increased investment and material input. The inefficient growth pattern, sparking increasingly acute contradictions between resources and the environment, “can no longer continue,” the premier said.

Wen highlighted the “scientific concept of development,” indicating the shift in the government's development philosophy.

The proposal of the CPC Central Committee is based on the “scientific concept of development” that will also be the guide in the whole process of China's reform and opening-up drive, he said.

In his explanation, the premier also called for more efforts to build a harmonious society, saying that employment, social security, poverty reduction, education, medical care, environmental protection and safety will be given priority.

He said that employment will remain a tough issue for a long period of time to come, so China has to carry out pro-active employment policies and



try every means to create job opportunities.

On social security, the premier called for further efforts to improve the pension system, basic medical care, unemployment, industrial injuries and maternity care, to earnestly resolve the social security issue for migrant farmer workers in cities, and to set up a security system of minimum living standards for rural areas.



Cultural Links 文化链接

关于“十一五”时期需要处理好的重大关系

“十一五”时期的任务十分繁重和艰巨,有许多“两难”的棘手问题需要解决。做好今后五年的工作,要把握全局,统筹兼顾,突出重点,特别要注意处理好以下几个重大关系。

一是正确处理内需和外需的关系。立足于扩大国内需求,是我们必须长期坚持的重大战略方针。我国正处于工业化、城镇化进程加快阶段,人民群众收入水平提高和消费结构升级的发展阶段,国内储蓄率也较高,这就决定了我们需要也有可能主要依靠国内需求推动发展。既要继续扩大投资需求,保持固定资产投资以合理的规模和速度增长,更要注重扩大消费需求,进一步发挥消费对经济增长的拉动作用。同时,要继续拓展国际市场,扩大国外需求。要把扩大国内需求和合理利用国外需求很好地结合起来,促进经济平稳较快增长。

二是正确处理市场机制和宏观调控的关系。在社会主义市场经济体制已经初步建立的情况下,必须自觉按市场经济规律办事,更大程度地发挥市场在配置资源中的基础性作用,以增进经济社会活力,优化资源配置,提高经济。



Vocabulary 妙词连珠

bonded transportation 保税运输

从沿海到内地

from costal areas to the interior

stimulating the zone's development



促进本地区发展	setting up technologically-intensive
local special economic zone	firms 建立技术密集型公司
地方经济特区	setting up labour intensive enterprises
improving economic environment	建立劳动密集型企业
改善经济环境	setting up first grade enterprises
improving the investment environ-	建立一级企业
ment 改善投资环境	economic contract 经济合同
high-tech industrial park	economic cooperation 经济合作
高科技工业园	economic environment 经济环境
high-tech development zone	economic and technological develop-
高科技开发区	ment zone 经济技术开发区
overseas investment 海外投资	economic development area
overseas investor 海外投资者	经济开发区
sensational effect 轰动效应	

[General Information]

书名=辉煌建设

作者=刘玮，浩瀚主编

页数=281

SS号=11958635

DX号=000006323321

出版日期=2008.2

出版社=科学技术文献出版社